# **UNITED STATES** SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION

WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549

| X | ANNUAL REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 or 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934     |
|---|--|
|   | For the fiscal year ended March 2, 2019  |
|   | TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 or 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934 |
|   | For the transition period from to  |

# APOGEE ENTERPRISES, INC. (Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Commission File Number: 0-6365

Minnesota

(State or other jurisdiction of incorporation or organization) 41-0919654

(I.R.S. Employer Identification No.)

4400 West 78th Street - Suite 520, Minneapolis, MN (Address of principal executive offices)

55435

(Zip Code)

Registrant's telephone number, including area code: (952) 835-1874

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:

Title of each class

Name of each exchange on which registered

Common Stock, \$0.33 1/3 Par Value

The NASDAQ Stock Market LLC

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act: None

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act.

 $Indicate\ by\ check\ mark\ if\ the\ registrant\ is\ not\ required\ to\ file\ reports\ pursuant\ to\ Section\ 13\ or\ Section\ 15(d)\ of\ the\ Act.$ 

☐ Yes ☒ No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. 

✓ Yes 

No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically every Interactive Data File required to be submitted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit such files).

|                                    |                             | oursuant to Item 405 of Regulation S-K is not contained herein, and will not be contained, ion statements incorporated by reference in Part III of this Form 10-K or any amendment to |  |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|---|--|
|                                    | e definitions of "large     | te accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, smaller reporting compacecelerated filer," "accelerated filer," "smaller reporting company" and "emerging growth |  |
| Large accelerated filer            | X                           | Accelerated filer   |  |
| Non-accelerated filer              |                             | Smaller reporting company   |  |
| Emerging growth company            |                             |   |  |
|                                    |                             | ark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying is provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act.                                  |  |
| Indicate by check mark whether the | ne registrant is a shell co | ompany (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act). ☐ Yes 🗵 No   |  |
|                                    | quity held by non-affil     | gistrant's most recently completed second fiscal quarter, the approximate aggregate mark lates of the registrant was \$1,391,000,000 (based on the closing price of \$49.22 per share |  |
| As of April 24, 2019, 26,599,456   | shares of the registrant's  | s common stock, par value \$0.33 1/3 per share, were outstanding.   |  |
|                                    |                             |   |  |
| ·                                  |                             |   |  |

# APOGEE ENTERPRISES, INC. Annual Report on Form 10-K For the fiscal year ended March 2, 2019

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

|          |  | Page                   |
|----------|--|------------------------|
|          | PARTI  |                        |
| Item 1.  | Business   | <u>4</u>               |
| Item 1A. | Risk Factors   | <u>8</u>               |
| Item 1B. | <u>Unresolved Staff Comments</u>   | <u>11</u>              |
| Item 2.  | Properties Properties  | <u>11</u>              |
| Item 3.  | <u>Legal Proceedings</u>   | <u>12</u>              |
| Item 4.  | Mine Safety Disclosures  | <u>13</u>              |
|          | PART II  |                        |
| Item 5.  | Market for Registrant's Common Equity, Related Stockholder Matters and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities | <u>13</u>              |
| Item 6.  | Selected Financial Data  | <u>14</u>              |
| Item 7.  | Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations                        | <u>15</u>              |
| Item 7A. | Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk   | <u>22</u>              |
| Item 8.  | Financial Statements and Supplementary Data  | <u>22</u><br><u>24</u> |
| Item 9.  | Changes in and Disagreements with Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure                         | <u>52</u><br><u>52</u> |
| Item 9A. | Controls and Procedures  | <u>52</u>              |
| Item 9B. | Other Information  | <u>52</u>              |
|          | PART III   |                        |
| Item 10. | Directors, Executive Officers, Code of Ethics and Corporate Governance                                       | <u>52</u>              |
| Item 11. | Executive and Director Compensation  | <u>59</u>              |
| Item 12. | Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Stockholder Matters               | <u>86</u>              |
| Item 13. | Certain Relationships and Related Transactions, and Director Independence                                    | <u>89</u>              |
| Item 14. | Principal Accountant Fees and Services   | <u>89</u>              |
|          | PART IV  |                        |
| Item 15. | Exhibits and Financial Statement Schedules   | <u>90</u>              |
| Item 16. | Form 10-K Summary  | <u>93</u>              |
|          | <u>Signatures</u>  | <u>94</u>              |
|          |  |                        |
|          |  |                        |
|          | 3  |                        |

#### PART I

#### ITEM 1. BUSINESS

### The Company

Apogee Enterprises, Inc. (Apogee, the Company or we) was incorporated under the laws of the State of Minnesota in 1949. We are a world leader in the design and development of value-added glass and metal products and services for enclosing commercial buildings and framing and displays.

Our Company has four reporting segments, with three of the segments serving the commercial construction market:

- The Architectural Framing Systems segment designs, engineers, fabricates and finishes the aluminum frames used in customized window, curtainwall, storefront and entrance systems comprising the outside skin of buildings. For fiscal 2019, this segment accounted for approximately 51 percent of our net sales
- The Architectural Glass segment fabricates coated, high-performance glass used globally in customized window and wall systems. For fiscal 2019, this segment accounted for approximately 22 percent of our net sales.
- The Architectural Services segment provides building glass and curtainwall installation services. For fiscal 2019, this segment accounted for approximately 21 percent of our net sales.
- The Large-Scale Optical Technologies (LSO) segment manufactures value-added coated glass and acrylic products for framing and display
  applications. For fiscal 2019, this segment accounted for approximately 6 percent of our net sales.

On June 12, 2017, we acquired the stock of EFCO Corporation (EFCO), a privately-held U.S. manufacturer of architectural aluminum window, curtainwall, storefront and entrance systems for commercial construction projects, for approximately \$190 million. On December 14, 2016, we acquired substantially all the assets of Sotawall, Inc. (Sotawall), a privately-held Canadian designer and fabricator of high-performance, unitized curtainwall systems for commercial construction projects, for approximately \$138 million. Results of operations for each of these businesses have been included in the consolidated financial statements and within the Architectural Framing Systems segment since the date of each respective acquisition.

#### Strateg

Our strategies are to diversify revenue streams within the commercial construction industry and structure the business to provide more stable revenue growth and profit generation over an economic cycle. Our strategies are focused on diversification of end sectors served through growth from new geographies, new products and new markets, while improving margins through productivity, project selection initiatives and rigorous cost management.

In an effort to reduce our exposure to the cyclical nature of the large-building segment of the commercial construction industry, we have expanded our focus to include mid-sized projects in the Architectural Glass segment and have grown our geographic footprint through organic growth and acquisitions in the Architectural Framing Systems segment. We have also increased our focus on retrofit and renovation of windows and curtainwall within our Architectural Framing and Architectural Glass segments as we have seen increased interest from the non-residential and high-end multi-family residential building sectors in upgrading building façades and improving energy efficiency.

In the Architectural Services segment, our emphasis is on improving margins through focused project selection, while continuing to deliver long-term organic growth through geographic expansion in line with our available project management capacity.

Within the LSO segment, our strategy is to grow in newer display markets that desire the value-added properties that our glass and acrylic products provide, while continuing to convert the domestic and international custom picture-framing and fine art markets from clear uncoated glass and acrylic products to value-added products that protect art from UV damage and minimize reflection.

Across all our segments, we also regularly evaluate business development opportunities in adjacent sectors that will complement our existing portfolio. These business development strategies can be executed organically, through acquisition or with strategic alliances.

Finally, we are constantly working to improve the efficiency and productivity of our operations by implementing lean manufacturing disciplines and automation.

#### Products and Services

Architectural Framing Systems, Architectural Glass and Architectural Services segments

These three segments participate in various phases of the value chain to design, engineer, fabricate and install customized glass and aluminum window, curtainwall, storefront and entrance systems comprising the outside skin of buildings in the commercial, institutional and high-end multi-family residential construction exertors.

Within our Architectural Framing Systems segment, we design and fabricate window, curtainwall, storefront and entrance systems using our customized aluminum and glass, or glass supplied by others. We also provide finishing services for metal components used in windows and curtainwall, as well as plastic components for other products.

In our Architectural Glass segment, we apply ultra-thin, high-performance coatings to uncoated glass to create a variety of aesthetic characteristics, unique designs and energy efficiency, including varying levels of solar energy management to enhance energy-efficiency. We also laminate layers of glass and vinyl to protect against hurricanes and other severe impacts, and temper, or heat strengthen, glass to provide additional strength. Our high-performance glass is made-to-order and is typically fabricated into insulating and/or laminated glass units for installation into window, curtainwall, storefront or entrance systems.

By integrating technical capabilities, project management skills and field installation services, our Architectural Services segment provides design, engineering, fabrication and installation services for the outside skin of buildings. Our ability to efficiently design high-quality window and curtainwall systems and effectively manage the installation of building façades assists our customers in meeting the schedule and cost requirements of their jobs.

Our product and service offerings allow architects to create distinctive looks for commercial building such as office towers, hotels, education and athletic facilities and dormitories, health care facilities, government buildings, retail centers and multi-family residential buildings, while meeting functional requirements such as energy efficiency, hurricane, blast and other impact resistance and/or sound control.

### LSO segment

The LSO segment provides coated glass and acrylic primarily for use in wall decor and display applications. Products vary based on size and coatings applied to provide conservation-grade UV protection, anti-reflective and anti-static properties and/or security features.

### **Product Demand and Distribution Channels**

Architectural Framing Systems, Architectural Glass and Architectural Services segments

Demand for the products and services offered by our Architectural segments is affected by changes in the North American commercial construction industries, as well as by changes in general economic conditions. Additionally, the Architectural Glass segment has an operation in Brazil and is, therefore, also impacted by Brazil's commercial construction industry and general economic conditions.

We look at several external indicators to analyze potential demand for our products and services, such as U.S. and Canadian job growth, office space vacancy rates, credit and interest rates available for commercial construction projects, architectural billing statistics and material costs. We also rely on internal indicators to analyze demand, including our sales pipeline, made up of contracts in review, projects awarded or committed, and bidding activity. Our sales pipeline, together with ongoing feedback, analysis and data from our customers, architects and building owners, provide visibility into near- and medium-term future demand. Additionally, we evaluate data on U.S. and Canadian non-residential construction market activity, industry analysis and longer-term trends provided by external data sources.

Our architectural products and services are used in subsets of the construction industry differentiated by building type, level of customization required, customers, geographic location and project size.

<u>Building type</u> - The construction industry is typically segmented into residential construction and non-residential construction, which includes commercial, industrial and institutional construction. Our products and services are primarily used in commercial buildings (office towers, hotels and retail centers) and institutional buildings (education facilities and dormitories, health care facilities and government buildings), as well as in high-end multi-family residential buildings (a subset of residential construction).

<u>Level of customization</u> - The large majority of our projects involve a high degree of customization, as the product or service is based on customer-specified requirements for aesthetics, performance and size, and is designed to satisfy local building codes.

Customers and distribution channels - Our customers are mainly glazing subcontractors and general contractors, with project design being influenced by architects and building owners. Our high-performance architectural glass is primarily sold using a

direct sales force and independent sales representatives. Installation services are sold by a direct sales force in certain metropolitan areas in the U.S. We sell our custom and standard windows, curtainwall, storefront and entrance systems using a combination of direct sales forces, independent sales representatives

Geographic location - We primarily supply architectural glass products to customers in North America, with some international sales of our high-performance architectural glass. We estimate the U.S. demand for architectural glass fabrication in non-residential buildings is in excess of \$1.5 billion annually. Our aluminum framing systems, including windows, curtainwall, storefront and entrances, are marketed primarily in the U.S. and Canada, and we estimate demand to be in excess of \$3 billion annually. In installation services, we are one of only a few architectural glass installation companies in the U.S. to have a national presence; we have the ability to provide remote installation project management throughout the U.S. We estimate the U.S. demand for installation services on commercial projects to be in excess of \$10 billion.

<u>Project size</u> - Our Architectural Glass segment primarily serves mid-size to monumental high-profile projects. Architectural Framing Systems primarily targets small and mid-size projects, and Architectural Services primarily serves mid-size projects.

#### LSO segment

In our LSO segment, we have a leading brand of value-added coated glass and acrylic used in the custom picture-framing market. Under the Tru Vue brand, products are sold primarily in North America through national and regional retail chains using a direct sales force, as well as through local picture framing shops using an independent distribution network. We also supply our glass and acrylic products to museums, shops and galleries worldwide through independent distributors. We have also begun to supply to other display markets, such as digital signage, and to other wall decor sectors.

### **Competitive Conditions**

Architectural Framing Systems, Architectural Glass and Architectural Services segments

The North American commercial construction market is highly fragmented. Competitive factors include price, product quality, product attributes and performance, reliable service, on-time delivery, lead-time, warranty and the ability to provide project management, technical engineering and design services. To protect and enhance our competitive position, we maintain strong relationships with architects, who influence the selection of products and services on a project, and with general contractors, who initiate projects and develop specifications.

The competition in the commercial window and storefront manufacturing industry is highly fragmented, and our Architectural Framing Systems segment competes against several national, regional and local aluminum window and storefront manufacturers, as well as regional paint and anodizing finishing companies. Our businesses compete by providing high-quality products, faster than average lead times, and on-time delivery.

In our Architectural Glass segment, we experience competition from regional glass fabricators who can provide certain products with attributes similar to our products. Within the market sector for large, complex projects, we encounter competition from international companies and large regional fabricators, some of which have benefited from the relative strength of the U.S. dollar and lower fabrication costs in recent years. We are able to compete with our competitors by providing high-quality, customizable products, short lead times, and responsive customer service.

Our Architectural Services segment competes against national, regional and local glass installation companies. We distinguish ourselves from these competitors through our strong project management and ability to regularly meet or exceed each project's unique execution requirements.

#### LSO segment

Product attributes, price, quality, marketing and service are the primary competitive factors in the LSO segment. Our competitive strengths include our excellent relationships with customers, innovative marketing programs and the performance of our value-added products. We compete with certain European and U.S. valued-added glass and acrylic products for picture framing and display.

#### Warranties

We offer product and service warranties that we believe are competitive for the markets in which our products and services are sold. The nature and extent of these warranties depend upon the product or service, the market and, in some cases, the customer being served. Our standard warranties are generally from two to 10 years for our architectural glass, curtainwall and window system products, while we generally offer warranties of two years or less on our other products and services.

#### Sources and Availability of Raw Materials

Raw materials used within the Architectural Glass segment include flat glass, vinyl, silicone sealants and lumber. Materials used in the Architectural Framing Systems segment include aluminum billet and extrusions, fabricated glass, plastic extrusions, hardware, paint and chemicals. Within the Architectural Services segment, materials used include fabricated glass, aluminum extrusions and fabricated metal panels. The LSO segment mainly uses glass and acrylic. Most of our raw materials are readily available from a variety of domestic and international sources.

#### Trademarks and Patents

We have several trademarks and trade names that we believe have significant value in the marketing of our products, including APOGEE®. Trademark registrations in the U.S. are generally for a term of 10 years, renewable every 10 years as long as the trademark is used in the regular course of trade.

Within the Architectural Framing Systems segment, LINETEC®, WAUSAU WINDOW AND WALL SYSTEMS®, TUBELITE®, ADVANTAGE BY WAUSAU®, 300ES®, FINISHER OF CHOICE®, THERML=BLOCK®, MAXBLOCK®, DFG®, ECOLUMINUM®, ALUMINATE®, GET THE POINT!®, FORCEFRONT®, SOTAWALL®, HYBRID-WALL®, EFCO®, TERRASTILE®, THERMASTILE®, TRIPLE SET®, ULTRADIZE®, ULTRAFLUR®, ULTRALINE®, ULTRAPON® and XTHERM® are registered trademarks. CUSTOM WINDOW™, INVENT™, INVENT™, INVENTPUN, EICL™, HERITAGE™, VISULINE™, SEAL™, SUPERWALL™, CROSSTRAK™, HP-Wall™, VersaTherm™, E-Strut™, E-Strut™, E-Lite™, Series 960 Wall™, Durastile™ and X Force™ are unregistered trademarks. ALUMICOR™, BUILDING EXCELLENCE™, TerraPorte 7600 Out-Swing accessABLE™, Integra 6000™ and ThermaSlide™ are unregistered trademarks in Canada.

Within the Architectural Glass segment, VIRACON®, DIGITALDISTINCTIONS®, ROOMSIDE®, EXTREMEDGE®, BUILDING DESIGN®, GLASS IS EVERYTHING®, CLEARPOINT®, CYBERSHIELD® and STORMGUARD® are registered trademarks. VIRASPAN™, VTS™ and VELOCITY, A VIRACON COMPANY™ are unregistered trademarks. In addition, GLASSECVIRACON®, GLASSEC®, INSULATTO® and BLINDATTO® are registered trademarks in Brazil

Within the Architectural Services segment, HARMON®, H DESIGN®, HARMON GLASS®, HI-7000®, BUILDING TRUST IN EVERYTHING WE DO ® and INNOVATIVE FAÇADE SOLUTIONS® are registered trademarks. UCW-8000™, HI-8500™, HI-9000™, SMU-6000™ and HPW-250™ are unregistered trademarks.

Within the LSO segment, TRU VUE®, CONSERVATION CLEAR®, CONSERVATION REFLECTION CONTROL®, ULTRAVUE®, MUSEUM GLASS®, OPTIUM®, PREMIUM CLEAN®, REFLECTION CONTROL®, AR REFLECTION-FREE®, OPTIUM ACRYLIC®, OPTIUM MUSEUM ACRYLIC®, CONSERVATION MASTERPIECE®, STATICSHIELD®, TRULIFE®, VISTA AR® and PREMIUM CLEAR® are registered trademarks. TRULIFE INFINITY FRAME™, THE DIFFERENCE IS CLEAR™ and TRU FRAMEABLE MOMENTS™ are unregistered trademarks.

We have several patents pertaining to our glass coating methods and products, for hybrid window wall/curtainwall systems and methods of installation and for our UV coating and etch processes for anti-reflective glass for the picture framing industry and fine art market. Despite being a point of differentiation from our competitors, no single patent is considered to be material.

#### Seasonalit

We do not experience a significant seasonal effect in our Architectural segments. However, the construction industry is highly cyclical in nature and can be influenced differently by the effects of local economies. Within the LSO segment, North American picture framing glass and acrylic sales tend to increase in the September-to-December timeframe, but the timing of customer promotional activities may offset some of this seasonal impact.

#### Working Capital Requirements

Trade and contract-related receivables and other contract assets are the largest components of our working capital. Inventory requirements, mainly related to raw materials, are most significant in our Architectural Framing Systems and Architectural Glass segments.

#### Backlog

Backlog represents the dollar amount of signed contracts or firm orders, generally as a result of a competitive bidding process, which is expected to be recognized as revenue primarily in the near-term. Backlog is not a term defined under U.S. GAAP and is not a measure of contract profitability. Backlog should not be used as the sole indicator of our future revenue because we have a substantial amount of projects with short lead times that book-and-bill within the same reporting period and are not included in backlog. We have strong visibility beyond backlog, as projects awarded, verbal commitments and bidding activities are monitored separately and not included in backlog.

Architectural Framing Systems segment backlog grew to \$399.5 million at year-end, net of intersegment eliminations, compared to \$378.4 million at the end of the prior year, due primarily to strong order activity, particularly of longer lead-time contracts. Approximately 70 percent of the backlog in this segment is expected to be fulfilled in fiscal 2020, with the remainder expected to be filled in fiscal 2021 and beyond.

Architectural Glass segment backlog as of year-end was \$71.3 million, compared to \$36.7 million in the prior year, net of intersegment eliminations, due to strong order activity and extended lead times. The backlog is all expected to be fulfilled in fiscal 2020.

Backlog in the Architectural Services segment as of year-end was \$444.0 million, compared to \$426.3 million in the prior year, due to timing of firm orders and signed contracts. Approximately 50 percent of the backlog in this segment is expected to be filled during fiscal 2020, with the remainder expected to be filled in fiscal 2021 and beyond.

Backlog is not a significant metric for the LSO segment, as orders are typically booked and billed within a short time-frame.

#### Environment

We use hazardous materials in our manufacturing operations, and have air and water emissions that require controls. As a result, we are subject to stringent federal, state and local regulations governing the storage and use of these metarials and disposal of wastes. We contract with outside vendors to collect and dispose of waste at our production facilities in compliance with applicable environmental laws. In addition, we have procedures in place that we believe enable us to properly manage the regulated materials used in and wastes created by our manufacturing processes. We believe we are currently in material compliance with such laws and regulations. While we will continue to incur environmental compliance costs for our ongoing manufacturing operations, we do not expect these to be material to our consolidated financial statements. We have one manufacturing facility where we are working to remediate historical environmental impacts. The remediation activities are being conducted without significant disruption to our operations.

#### **Employees**

The Company had approximately 7,000 and 6,700 employees on March 2, 2019 and March 3, 2018, respectively. At March 2, 2019, 601 of these employees were represented by U.S. labor unions.

#### International Sales

Information regarding export and international sales is included in Item 8, Financial Statements and Supplementary Data, within Note 15 of our Consolidated Financial Statements.

#### Available Information

The Company maintains a website at <a href="https://www.apog.com">www.apog.com</a>. Through a link to a third-party content provider, our website provides free access to the Company's Annual Reports on Form 10-K, Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q, Current Reports on Form 8-K and, if applicable, amendments to those reports filed or furnished pursuant to Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the Exchange Act), as soon as reasonably practicable after electronic filing such material with, or furnishing it to, the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC). These reports are also available on the SEC's website at <a href="https://www.sec.gov">www.sec.gov</a>. Also available on our website are various corporate governance documents, including our Code of Business Ethics and Conduct, Corporate Governance Guidelines, and charters for the Audit, Compensation, and Nominating and Corporate Governance Committees of the Board of Directors.

#### ITEM 1A. RISK FACTORS

Our business faces many risks. Any of the risks discussed below, or elsewhere in this Form 10-K or our other filings with the Securities and Exchange Commission, could have a material adverse impact on our business, financial condition or results of operations.

# $\underline{\textit{North American economic and industry-related business conditions}}$

Our Architectural Framing Systems, Architectural Glass and Architectural Services segments are dependent on North American economic conditions and the cyclical nature of the North American commercial construction industry. The commercial construction industry is impacted by macroeconomic trends that, in tum, affect, among other things, availability of credit, employment levels, consumer confidence, interest rates and commodity prices. To the extent changes in these factors negatively impact the overall commercial construction industry, our revenue and profits could be significantly reduced.

Our LSO segment primarily depends on the strength of the retail custom picture framing industry. This industry is highly dependent on consumer confidence and the conditions of the U.S. economy. A decline in consumer confidence, whether as a result of an

economic slowdown, uncertainty regarding the future or other factors, could result in a decrease in net sales and operating income of this segment.

#### Foreign currency exchange impacts

Our international subsidiaries report their results of operations and financial position in their relevant functional currencies (local country currency), which are then translated into U.S. dollars. This translated financial information is included in our consolidated financial statements. As the relationship between these currencies and the U.S. dollar changes, there could be a negative impact on our reported results and financial position.

In addition, when the U.S. dollar strengthens against foreign currencies, imports of products into the U.S. produced by international competitors become more price competitive and exports of our U.S.-fabricated products become less price competitive. If we are not able to counteract these types of price pressures through superior quality and service, our net sales and operating income could be negatively impacted.

New competitors or specific actions of our existing competitors

All of our operating segments operate in competitive industries where the actions of our existing competitors or new competitors could result in a loss of customers or share of customers' demand. Changes in our competitors' products, prices or services could negatively impact our share of demand, net sales or

Our Architectural Framing Systems and Architectural Glass segments have seen an increase in imports of competitive products into the U.S. from international suppliers due to the relative strength of the U.S. dollar. If imports of competitive products were to occur at increased levels for extended periods of time, our net sales and margins could be negatively impacted.

Our LSO segment competes with several international specialty glass manufacturers and international and domestic acrylic suppliers. If these competitors are able to successfully increase their product attributes, service capabilities and production capacity and/or increase their sales and marketing focus in the U.S. custom picture framing market, this segment's net sales and margins could be negatively impacted.

### Acquisitions and related integration activities

We have completed and may complete additional acquisitions in the future to accelerate the execution of our growth strategies, including new geographies, adjacent market sectors and new product introductions. While we have a disciplined approach to assessing potential acquisition targets, conducting due diligence activities, negotiating appropriate acquisition terms and integration activities, there are risks inherent in completing acquisitions, including:

- diversion of management's attention from existing business activities;
- difficulties or delays in integrating and assimilating information and financial systems, operations and products of an acquired business or other business venture or in realizing projected efficiencies, growth prospects, cost savings and synergies;
- potential loss of key employees, customers and suppliers of the acquired businesses or adverse effects on relationships with existing customers and
- adverse impact on overall profitability if the acquired business does not achieve the return on investment projected at the time of acquisition; and
- with respect to the acquired assets and liabilities, inaccurate assessment of additional post-acquisition capital investments; undisclosed, contingent or other liabilities; problems executing backlog of material supply or installation projects; unanticipated costs; and an inability to recover or manage such liabilities and costs.

If one or more of these risks were to arise in a material manner, our operating results could be negatively impacted.

### Goodwill and indefinite-lived intangible asset impairment

Our total assets include a significant amount of goodwill and indefinite-lived intangible assets. We test goodwill and indefinite-lived intangibles for impairment annually, or more frequently if events or changes in circumstances indicate the potential for impairment. If future operating performance at one or more of our operating units were to fall significantly below forecast levels or if market conditions for one or more of our acquired businesses were to decline in a material and sustained manner, we could incur a non-cash impairment charge that would negatively impact our net earnings for the fiscal period in which the charge was recorded.

Effective utilization and management of our manufacturing capacity

Near-term performance depends, to a significant degree, on our ability to provide sufficient available capacity and appropriately utilize existing production capacity. The failure to successfully maintain existing capacity, successfully implement planned capacity expansions, and/or make timely investments in additional physical capacity could adversely affect our operating results.

Loss of key personnel and inability to source sufficient labor.

Our success depends on the skills of the Company's leadership, construction project managers and other key technical personnel, and our ability to secure sufficient manufacturing and installation labor. Increased activity in residential and commercial construction has caused increased competition for experienced construction project managers. Additionally, some of our manufacturing facilities are located in regions that at times have experienced low levels of unemployment. If we are unable to retain existing employees and/or recruit and train additional employees with the requisite skills and experience, our operating results could be adversely impacted.

Commodity price fluctuations, trade policy impacts and supply availability

Our Architectural Framing Systems and Architectural Services segments use aluminum as a significant input to their products. While we structure many of our supply agreements in a way to moderate the effects of fluctuations in the market for raw aluminum and we endeavor to adjust our pricing to offset potential impacts, operating results could be negatively impacted by price movements in the market for raw aluminum.

In recent years, we have seen increased volatility and tariffs impacting the cost of aluminum that we purchase from both domestic and international sources. Due to our Architectural Framing Systems segment presence in Canada, we have significant cross-border activity, as our Canadian businesses purchase inputs from U.S.-based suppliers and sell to U.S.-based customers. A significant change in U.S. trade policy with Canada could therefore have an adverse impact on our net sales and operating results.

Our Architectural Glass and LSO segments use raw glass as a significant input to their products. We periodically experience a tighter supply of raw glass when there is growth in automotive manufacturing and residential and non-residential construction. Although we have secured supply commitments from multiple suppliers that allow us to reach our near-term growth targets, a significant unplanned downtime or shift in strategy at one or more of our key suppliers could negatively impact our operating results.

<u>Product quality issues</u>
We manufacture and/or install a significant portion of our products based on the specific requirements of each customer. We believe that future orders of our products or services will depend on our ability to maintain the performance, reliability and quality standards required by our customers. If our products have performance, reliability or quality problems, or products are installed using incompatible glazing materials or installed improperly (by us or a customer), we may experience additional warranty expense; reduced or canceled orders; higher manufacturing or installation costs; or delays in the collection of accounts receivable. Additionally, performance, reliability or quality claims from our customers could result in costly and time-consuming litigation that could require significant time and attention of management and involve significant monetary damages that could negatively impact our operating results.

#### Project management and installation issues

The Architectural Services segment and, occasionally, the Architectural Framing Systems segment are awarded fixed-price contracts that include material supply and installation services. Often, bids are required before all aspects of a construction project are known. An underestimate in the amount of labor supply and insulations are considered to the construction of the delivery of product; system design errors; difficulties or errors in execution; or significant project delays, caused by us or other trades, could result in failure to achieve the expected results. Any one or more of such issues could result in losses on individual contracts that could negatively impact our operating results.

Additionally, one of our subsidiaries is party to a large construction project that is experiencing project delays that have resulted in significant additional costs. Further delays in the project completion schedule or legal action related to such project could have additional negative impact on our operating

#### Changes in architectural trends, building codes or consumer preferences

Any change in commercial construction customer preference, architectural trends or building codes that reduce window-to-wall ratios could negatively impact net sales and operating income in our architectural-related segments. The LSO segment depends on U.S. consumers framing art and other decorative items. Any shift in customer preference away from framed art to other forms of wall decor could negatively impact future net sales and operating income in the LSO segment.

<u>Customer dependence in the LSO segment</u>

The LSO segment is highly dependent on a relatively small number of customers for its sales, while working to grow in new markets and with new customers. Accordingly, loss of a significant customer, a significant reduction in pricing, or a shift to a less favorable mix of value-added picture framing glass or acrylic products for one or more of those customers could materially reduce LSO net sales and operating results.

Results can differ significantly from our expectations and the expectations of analysts

Our sales and earnings guidance and resulting external analyst estimates are largely based on our view of our business and the broader commercial construction market. Even though we have market intelligence through our contacts with real estate developers, building owners and architects, and continually monitor micro- and macro-economic indicators of future performance of the commercial construction market, we are unable to precisely predict events that can significantly change market cycles. Failure to meet our guidance or analyst expectations for net sales and earnings would likely have an adverse impact on the market price of our common stock

# $\underline{Significant\ risk\ retention\ through\ self-insurance\ programs}$

We obtain hind-party insurance to provide coverage for potential risk in areas such as employment practices, workers' compensation, directors and officers, automobile, architect's and engineer's errors and omissions, product rework and general liability, as well as medical insurance and various other coverages. However, a high amount of risk is retained on a self-insured basis, partially through our wholly-owned insurance subsidiary. Therefore, a material architectural product liability event could have a material adverse effect on our operating results.

### <u>Dependence on information technology systems and potential security threats</u>

Our operations are dependent upon various information technology systems that are used to process, transmit and store electronic information, and to manage or support our manufacturing operations and a variety of other business processes and activities. We could encounter difficulties in maintaining our existing systems, and developing and implementing new systems. Such difficulties could lead to disruption in business operations and/or significant additional expenses that could adversely affect our results.

Additionally, information technology security threats are increasing in frequency and sophistication. These threats pose a risk to the security of our systems and networks, and the confidentiality, availability and integrity of our data. Should such an attack succeed, it could lead to the compromise of confidential information, manipulation and destruction of data and product specifications, production downtimes, disruption in the availability of financial data, or misrepresentation of information via digital media. The occurrence of any of these events could adversely affect our reputation and could result in litigation, regulatory action, project delay claims, and increased costs and operational consequences of implementing further data protection systems.

### Use of hazardous chemicals and environmental compliance

We use hazardous chemicals in the production process of some of our products. As a result, we are subject to a variety of local, state and federal governmental regulations relating to storage, discharge, handling, emission, generation and disposal of toxic or other hazardous substances used to manufacture our products, compliance with which is expensive. Our failure to comply with current or future environmental regulations could result in the imposition of substantial fines, suspension of production, alteration of our manufacturing processes or increased costs.

### ITEM 1B. UNRESOLVED STAFF COMMENTS

None.

#### ITEM 2. PROPERTIES

The following table lists, by segment, the Company's major properties as of March 2, 2019.

| Property Location  | Owned/ Leased                           | Function                               |
|--|---|--|
| Architectural Framing Systems segment                                    |   |  |
|  |   | Manufacturing/Administrative           |
| Wausau, WI   | Owned                                   |  |
| Stratford, WI  | Owned                                   | Manufacturing                          |
| Reed City, MI  | Owned                                   | Manufacturing                          |
| Walker, MI   | Leased                                  | Manufacturing/Administrative           |
| Dallas, TX   | Leased                                  | Manufacturing                          |
| Toronto, ON Canada   | Leased                                  |  |
| Toronto, ON Canada   | Owned                                   | Manufacturing/Warehouse/Administrative |
|  | - · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | Manufacturing                          |
| Brampton, ON Canada  | Leased                                  | Manufacturing/Warehouse/Administrative |
| Verona, VA   | Leased                                  | Manufacturing/Warehouse/Administrative |
| Springfield, MO  | Leased                                  | Manufacturing/Warehouse/Administrative |
| Monett, MO   | Owned                                   | Manufacturing/Warehouse/Administrative |
| Langley, BC Canada   | Leased                                  | Manufacturing                          |
| Architectural Glass segment  |   |  |
| Owatonna, MN   | Owned                                   | Manufacturing/Administrative           |
| Owatonna, MN   | Leased                                  | Warehouse                              |
| Statesboro, GA   | Owned                                   | Manufacturing/Warehouse                |
| Nazaré Paulista, Brazil  | Owned(1)                                | Manufacturing/Administrative           |
| Architectural Services segment   |   |  |
| Minneapolis, MN  | Leased                                  | Administrative                         |
| West Chester, OH   | Leased                                  | Manufacturing                          |
| Mesquite, TX   | Leased                                  | Manufacturing                          |
| Glen Burnie, MD  | Leased                                  | Manufacturing                          |
| Orlando, FL  | Leased                                  | Manufacturing                          |
| LSO segment  |   |  |
|  |   | Manufacturing/Warehouse/Administrative |
| McCook, IL   | Owned                                   |  |
| Faribault, MN  | Owned                                   | Manufacturing/Administrative           |
| <u>Other</u>   |   |  |
| Minneapolis, MN  | Leased                                  | Administrative                         |
| (i) This is an arrand facility harrayon the land is lessed from the city |   |  |

This is an owned facility; however, the land is leased from the city.

#### ITEM 3. LEGAL PROCEEDINGS

# Murray Mayer v. Apogee Enterprises, Inc., et al

On November 5, 2018, Murray Mayer, individually and on behalf of all others similarly situated, filed a purported class action lawsuit against the Company and our Chief Executive Officer and our Chief Financial Officer in the United States District Court for the District of Minnesota. The complaint generally alleges that, throughout the purported class period of June 28, 2018 to September 17, 2018, the Company and the named executive officers made materially false and/or misleading statements and failed to disclose material adverse facts about the Company's business, operations, and prospects, particularly with respect to our Architectural Glass business segment, and further alleges that the defendants violated Sections 10(b) and 20(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. The complaint seeks unspecified sums of damages, award of counsel fees and costs, and equitable relief. The Company intends to vigorously defend against this matter.

# Justin Buley v. Apogee Enterprises, Inc. et al

On December 17, 2018, Justin Buley filed a derivative lawsuit, purportedly on behalf of the Company, against our Chief Executive Officer, our Chief Financial Officer and eight of the nine non-executive members of our Board of Directors, in the Fourth Judicial District of the State of Minnesota. The complaint alleges claims for breach of fiduciary duty, waste of corporate assets and unjust enrichment, arising from substantially similar allegations as those described in the Mayer litigation above. The complaint seeks an unspecified sum of damages and equitable relief, including requiring the Company to offer our shareholders the opportunity to vote for certain amendments to our Bylaws or Articles of Incorporation purporting to improve identified corporate governance practices. As of the date of filing this report, the parties have agreed to a stay of the proceeding. We intend to vigorously defend against this report.

In addition to the foregoing, the Company has been a party to various legal proceedings incidental to its normal operating activities. In particular, like others in the construction supply and services industry, the Company's construction supply and services businesses are routinely involved in various disputes and claims arising out of construction projects, sometimes involving demands for significant monetary damages or product replacement. The Company has also been subject to litigation arising out of general

liability, employment practices, workers' compensation and automobile claims. Although it is very difficult to accurately predict the outcome of such proceedings, facts currently available indicate that no such claims will result in losses that would have a material adverse effect on the results of operations, cash flows or financial condition of the Company.

### ITEM 4. MINE SAFETY DISCLOSURES

Not applicable.

### PART II

# ITEM 5. MARKET FOR REGISTRANT'S COMMON EQUITY, RELATED STOCKHOLDER MATTERS AND ISSUER PURCHASES OF EQUITY SECURITIES

#### Market Information

Apogee common stock is traded on the NASDAQ Stock Market under the ticker symbol "APOG".

As of April 11, 2019, there were 1,156 shareholders of record and approximately 14,500 shareholders for whom securities firms acted as nominees.

#### Dividende

Quarterly, the Board of Directors evaluates declaring dividends based on operating results, available funds and the Company's financial condition. Cash dividends have been paid each quarter since 1974. The chart below shows quarterly and annual cumulative cash dividends per share for the past three fiscal years.

|      | First        | Second       | Third        | Fourth       | Total        |
|------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| 2019 | \$<br>0.1575 | \$<br>0.1575 | \$<br>0.1575 | \$<br>0.1750 | \$<br>0.6475 |
| 2018 | 0.1400       | 0.1400       | 0.1400       | 0.1575       | 0.5775       |
| 2017 | 0.1250       | 0.1250       | 0.1250       | 0.1400       | 0.5150       |

### Purchases of Equity Securities by the Company

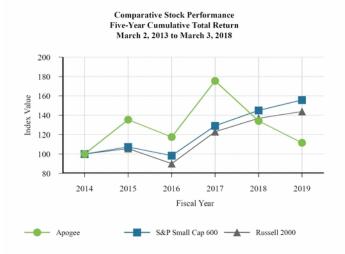
The following table provides information with respect to purchases made by the Company of its own stock during the fourth quarter of fiscal 2019:

| Period                                     | Total Number of<br>Shares Purchased | Average Price Paid<br>per Share | Total Number of<br>Shares Purchased<br>as Part of Publicly<br>Announced Plans<br>or Programs (a) | Maximum Number of Shares that May Yet Be Purchased under the Plans or Programs (a) |
|--|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|--|--|
| December 2, 2018 through December 29, 2018 | 353,747                             | \$ 29.80                        | 353,747  | 2,286,321  |
| December 30, 2018 through January 26, 2019 | 258,257                             | 31.91                           | 258,257  | 2,028,064  |
| January 27, 2019 through March 2, 2019     | 45,979                              | 33.77                           | 45,979   | 1,982,085  |
| Total                                      | 657,983                             | \$ 31.59                        | 657,983  | 1,982,085  |

(a) On April 10, 2003, the Board of Directors authorized the repurchase of 1,500,000 shares of Company stock. The Board increased the authorization by 750,000 shares, announced on January 24, 2008; by 1,000,000 shares on each of the announcement dates of October 8, 2008, January 13, 2016, and January 9, 2018; and by 2,000,000 shares, announced on October 3, 2018. The Company's repurchase program does not have an expiration date.

#### Comparative Stock Performance

The graph below compares the cumulative total shareholder return on a \$100 investment in our common stock for the last five fiscal years with the cumulative total return on a \$100 investment in the Standard & Poor's Small Cap 600 Growth Index and the Russell 2000 Index. The graph assumes an investment at the close of trading on March 1, 2014, and also assumes the reinvestment of all dividends.



|                                | 2014         | 2015         | 2016         | 2017         | 2018         | 2019         |
|--------------------------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| Apogee                         | \$<br>100.00 | \$<br>135.46 | \$<br>117.57 | \$<br>175.54 | \$<br>134.18 | \$<br>111.68 |
| S&P Small Cap 600 Growth Index | 100.00       | 107.27       | 98.43        | 129.09       | 145.05       | 155.75       |
| Russell 2000 Index             | 100.00       | 105.63       | 90.09        | 122.98       | 136.89       | 143.84       |

We are not aware of any competitors, public or private, that are similar to us in size and scope of business activities. Most of our direct competitors are either privately owned or divisions of larger, publicly owned companies.

# ITEM 6. SELECTED FINANCIAL DATA

The following information should be read in conjunction with Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations, included in Item 7 of this Report, and our consolidated financial statements and related notes, included in Item 8 of this Report.

|   |    |           |    |           |    | Fiscal Year |    |         |    |         |
|---|----|-----------|----|-----------|----|-------------|----|---------|----|---------|
| (In thousands, except per share data and percentages) |    | 2019      |    | 2018(1)   |    | 2017(2)(3)  |    | 2016    |    | 2015    |
| Results of Operations Data                            |    |           |    |           |    |             |    |         |    |         |
| Net sales   | \$ | 1,402,637 | \$ | 1,326,173 | \$ | 1,114,533   | \$ | 981,189 | \$ | 933,936 |
| Gross profit  |    | 293,565   |    | 333,518   |    | 292,023     |    | 243,570 |    | 208,544 |
| Operating income                                      |    | 67,284    |    | 114,284   |    | 122,225     |    | 97,393  |    | 63,585  |
| Net earnings  |    | 45,694    |    | 79,488    |    | 85,790      |    | 65,342  |    | 50,516  |
| Earnings per share - basic                            |    | 1.64      |    | 2.79      |    | 2.98        |    | 2.25    |    | 1.76    |
| Earnings per share - diluted                          |    | 1.63      |    | 2.76      |    | 2.97        |    | 2.22    |    | 1.72    |
| Cash dividends per share                              |    | 0.6475    |    | 0.5775    |    | 0.5150      |    | 0.4550  |    | 0.4100  |
| Balance Sheet Data                                    |    |           |    |           |    |             |    |         |    |         |
| Total assets  |    | 1,068,168 |    | 1,022,320 |    | 784,658     |    | 657,440 |    | 612,057 |
| Long-term debt  |    | 245,724   |    | 215,860   |    | 65,400      |    | 20,400  |    | 20,587  |
| Shareholders' equity                                  |    | 496,317   |    | 511,355   |    | 470,577     |    | 406,195 |    | 382,476 |
| Other Data  |    |           |    |           |    |             |    |         |    |         |
| Gross profit as a percentage of sales                 |    | 20.9%     |    | 25.1%     |    | 26.2%       |    | 24.8%   |    | 22.3%   |
| Operating income as a percentage of sales             |    | 4.8%      |    | 8.6%      |    | 11.0%       |    | 9.9%    |    | 6.8%    |
| Return on average invested capital <sup>(4)</sup>     |    | 5.6%      |    | 9.3%      |    | 14.3%       |    | 12.7%   |    | 8.8%    |

- (1) Includes the acquisition of EFCO in June 2017.
- Fiscal 2017 contained 53 weeks. Each of the other periods presented contained 52 weeks.
- Includes the acquisition of Sotawall in December 2016.
- Return on average invested capital is a non-GAAP measure that we define as [operating income x .75]/average invested capital. We believe this measure is useful in understanding operational performance over time. This non-GAAP measure should be viewed in addition to, and not as an alternative to, the reported financial results of the company prepared in accordance with GAAP. Other companies may calculate this measure differently from us, thereby limiting the usefulness of the measure for

### ITEM 7. MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

This discussion contains "forward-looking statements" within the meaning of the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995. These statements reflect our current views with respect to future events and financial performance. The words "believe," "expect," "anticipate," "intend," "estimate," "forecast," "project," "should" and similar expressions are intended to identify "forward-looking statements" within the meaning of the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995. All forecasts and projections in this document are "forward-looking statements," and are based on management's current expectations or beliefs of the Company's near-term results, based on current information available pertaining to the Company, including the risk factors noted under Item 1A in this Form 10-K. From time to time, we also may provide oral and written forward-looking statements in other materials we release to the public, such as press releases, presentations to securities analysts or investors, or other communications by the Company. Any or all of our forward-looking statements in this report and in any public statements we make could be materially different from actual results.

Accordingly, we wish to caution investors that any forward-looking statements made by or on behalf of the Company are subject to uncertainties and other factors that could cause actual results to differ materially from such statements. These uncertainties and other risk factors include, but are not limited to, the risks and uncertainties set forth under Item 1A in this Form 10-K.

We wish to caution investors that other factors might in the future prove to be important in affecting the Company's results of operations. New factors emerge from time to time; it is not possible for management to predict all such factors, nor can it assess the impact of each such factor on the business or the extent to which any factor, or a combination of factors, may cause actual results to differ materially from those contained in any forward-looking statements. We undertake no obligation to update publicly or revise any forward-looking statements, whether as a result of new information, future events or otherwise.

# Overview

We are a world leader in the design and development of value-added glass and metal products and services. Our four reporting segments are: Architectural Framing Systems, Architectural Glass, Architectural Services and Large-Scale Optical Technologies (LSO).

During fiscal 2019, we continued to focus on strategies to diversify and strengthen our revenue streams in order to improve the stability of our business throughout an economic cycle. These strategies are designed to diversify geographies, markets and project sizes served. Also in fiscal 2019, we executed a balanced capital allocation approach to invest in the business for growth and margin expansion while also returning significant capital to shareholders

Positive market conditions, coupled with these strategies, are expected to support continued growth in fiscal 2020 and beyond.

### Fiscal 2019 summary of results:

- Consolidated net sales were \$1.4 billion, an increase of 6 percent over fiscal 2018.

  Operating income was \$67.3 million, including \$40.9 million of project-related charges on certain contracts acquired with the purchase of EFCO, which was a decline of 41 percent from \$114.3 million in the prior year.
- Diluted EPS was \$1.63, compared to \$2.76 in the prior year, a decline of 41 percent.
- Adjusted operating income was \$116.3 million, a decrease of 13 percent compared to the prior year, and adjusted diluted EPS was \$2.96, a decrease of 8% compared to the prior year. Refer to the tables that follow for details of these adjusted amounts.

Adjusted operating income and adjusted earnings per diluted share (adjusted diluted EPS) are supplemental non-GAAP measures provided by the Company to assess performance on a more comparable basis from period-to-period by excluding amounts that management does not consider part of core operating results. Management uses these non-GAAP measures to evaluate the company's historical and prospective financial performance, measure operational profitability on a consistent basis, and provide enhanced transparency to the investment community. These non-GAAP measures should be viewed in addition to, and not as an alternative to, the reported financial results of the company prepared in accordance with GAAP. Other companies may calculate these measures differently, thereby limiting the usefulness of the measures for comparison with other companies.

# Reconciliation of Non-GAAP Financial Information Adjusted Operating Income and Adjusted Net Earnings per Diluted Common Share

|  |    |               |    |               |     | Diluted per s | share an | nounts       |  |
|--|----|---------------|----|---------------|-----|---------------|----------|--------------|--|
|  |    | Year-ended    |    |               |     | Year-ended    |          |              |  |
| In thousands                                     | N  | Iarch 2, 2019 | M  | Iarch 3, 2018 | Mar | ch 2, 2019    | M        | arch 3, 2018 |  |
| Operating income                                 | \$ | 67,284        | \$ | 114,284       | \$  | 1.63          | \$       | 2.76         |  |
| Amortization of short-lived acquired intangibles |    | 4,894         |    | 10,521        |     | 0.17          |          | 0.37         |  |
| Project-related charges                          |    | 40,948        |    | _             |     | 1.46          |          | _            |  |
| Impairment charge                                |    | 3,141         |    | _             |     | 0.11          |          | _            |  |
| Acquisition-related costs                        |    | _             |    | 5,098         |     | _             |          | 0.18         |  |
| Restructuring-related costs                      |    | _             |    | 3,026         |     | _             |          | 0.11         |  |
| Income tax impact on above adjustments           |    | N/A           |    | N/A           |     | (0.41)        |          | (0.18)       |  |
| Adjusted operating income                        | \$ | 116,267       | \$ | 132,929       | \$  | 2.96          | \$       | 3.23         |  |

#### Results of Operations Net Sales

| (Dollars in thousands) | 2019            | 2018            | 2017            | 2019 vs. 2018 | 2018 vs. 2 |
|------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|---------------|------------|
| Net sales              | \$<br>1,402,637 | \$<br>1,326,173 | \$<br>1,114,533 | 5.8%          |            |

#### Fiscal 2019 Compared to Fiscal 2018

Net sales in fiscal 2019 increased by 5.8 percent compared to fiscal 2018, driven by strong project execution in the Architectural Services segment, as well as growth from our Architectural Framing segment, primarily due to the addition of EFCO (acquired in June 2017) for the full period, partially offset by a sales decline in the Architectural Glass segment.

2017

19.0%

# Fiscal 2018 Compared to Fiscal 2017

Net sales in fiscal 2018 increased by 19.0 percent compared to fiscal 2017, due to the acquisition of EFCO in the second quarter of 2018. This acquisition, as well as a full year of results from Sotawall (acquired in the fourth quarter of fiscal 2017) and pricing and volume gains from our existing segment businesses. resulted in overall growth in our Architectural Framing Systems segment, which was partially offset by volume declines in our Architectural Services and Architectural Glass segments.

#### Performance

The relationship between various components of operations, as a percentage of net sales, is provided below

| (Percentage of net sales)                    | 2019    | 2018    | 2017   |
|--|---------|---------|--------|
| Net sales                                    | 100.0 % | 100.0 % | 100.0% |
| Cost of sales                                | 79.1    | 74.9    | 73.8   |
| Gross profit                                 | 20.9    | 25.1    | 26.2   |
| Selling, general and administrative expenses | 16.1    | 16.5    | 15.2   |
| Operating income                             | 4.8     | 8.6     | 11.0   |
| Interest (expense) income and other, net     | (0.6)   | (0.3)   | _      |
| Earnings before income taxes                 | 4.2     | 8.3     | 11.0   |
| Income tax expense                           | 0.9     | 2.3     | 3.3    |
| Net earnings                                 | 3.3 %   | 6.0 %   | 7.7%   |
| Effective income tax rate                    | 22.1 %  | 27.7 %  | 30.1%  |

### Fiscal 2019 Compared to Fiscal 2018

Gross profit was 20.9 percent in fiscal 2019, a decline of 420 basis points from fiscal 2018, driven by \$40.9 million of project-related charges on certain contracts acquired with the purchase of EFCO, higher operating costs in the Architectural Glass segment and negative leverage on reduced volumes and mix in the Architectural Framing segment, somewhat offset by volume leverage and good project performance in the Architectural Services segment.

Selling, general and administrative (SG&A) expense for fiscal 2019 was 16.1 percent, a decrease of 40 basis points but an increase of \$7.0 million from fiscal 2018. This was due to the inclusion of a full year of expense for EFCO (acquired in the second quarter of fiscal 2018), partially offset by lower amortization on acquired intangible assets.

Interest and other expenses increased by 30 basis points over the prior year due to an increase in the variable interest rate on our debt and a higher average outstanding debt balance throughout fiscal 2019 compared to fiscal 2018.

The effective tax rate for fiscal 2019 was 22.1 percent, compared to 27.7 percent in fiscal 2018. The decline of 560 basis points was the result of a full year of benefits from the U.S. Tax Cuts and Jobs Act (the Act), enacted in December 2017, as well as increased research and development tax credits in the current

Fiscal 2018 Compared to Fiscal 2017
Gross profit was 25.1 percent percent in fiscal 2018, a decline of 110 basis points from fiscal 2017, driven by reduced operating leverage on volume within the Architectural Services and Architectural Glass segments and the inclusion of EFCO at lower margins, somewhat offset by improved productivity across all our segments.

SG&A expense for fiscal 2018 was 16.5 percent, an increase of 130 basis points, or \$49.4 million, from fiscal 2017, mainly as a result of the inclusion of EFCO, as well as a full year of amortization expense on intangible assets acquired in the Sotawall transaction.

The effective tax rate for fiscal 2018 was 27.7 percent, a decline of 240 basis points compared to a rate of 30.1 percent in fiscal 2017, driven by a partial year of benefits from the Act.

#### Segment Analysis Architectural Framing Systems

| (In thousands)   | 2019          | 2018          | 2017          |
|------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| Net sales        | \$<br>720,829 | \$<br>677,198 | \$<br>385,978 |
| Operating income | 49,660        | 59,031        | 44,768        |
| Operating margin | 6.9%          | 8.7%          | 11.6%         |

Fiscal 2019 Compared to Fiscal 2018. Net sales improved 6.4 percent, or \$43.6 million, over fiscal 2018, with a full year of EFCO, acquired in the second quarter of fiscal 2018, contributing approximately 60 percent of the growth. Remaining growth was driven by increased order activity in our other businesses within this segment.

Operating margin declined 180 basis points over fiscal 2018, driven by the inclusion in the current year of a full year of EFCO at lower operating margins. In addition, we recorded a \$3.1 million impairment charge on an indefinite-lived intangible asset at EFCO.

Fiscal 2018 Compared to Fiscal 2017. Net sales improved 75.4 percent, or \$291.2 million, over fiscal 2017. EFCO contributed net sales of \$203.7 million in fiscal 2018, or approximately 70 percent of total segment growth, and Sotawall contributed 19 percent of the growth. Net sales increased 8.7 percent over fiscal 2017 within existing businesses, due to increased pricing in order to offset raw material cost inflation, volume growth due to gains in share of demand and geographic growth in North America. Operating margin declined 290 basis points over fiscal 2017, with improved margins in legacy businesses offset by the inclusion of EFCO at lower operating margins.

#### Architectural Glass

| (In thousands)   | 2019          | 2018          | 2017          |
|------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| Net sales        | \$<br>367,203 | \$<br>384,137 | \$<br>411,881 |
| Operating income | 16,503        | 32,764        | 44,656        |
| Operating margin | 4.5%          | 8.5%          | 10.8%         |

Fiscal 2019 Compared to Fiscal 2018. Fiscal 2019 net sales decreased 4.4 percent, or \$16.9 million, over the prior year due to changes in timing of customer orders, as well as volume declines stemming from operational challenges in the second and third fiscal quarters. Operating margin declined 400 basis points, largely due to increased labor costs, lower productivity and higher cost of quality due to challenges in ramping-up production in a tight labor market to meet higher than expected order intake and customer demand. In the second half of our fiscal year, we made progress on improving productivity and controlling costs.

Fiscal 2018 Compared to Fiscal 2017. Fiscal 2018 net sales decreased 6.7 percent, or \$27.7 million, over fiscal 2017 primarily due to volume declines on larger projects in our U.S.-based business, as a result of international competition, as well as lower pricing on a higher mix of less complex glass products for mid-size projects. Operating margin declined 230 basis points compared to fiscal 2017, driven by reduced operating leverage on lower volume, lower pricing due to project mix and restructuring-related charges associated with the closure of our Utah facility, somewhat offset by improved productivity.

#### Architectural Services

| (In thousands)   | 2019          |    | 2018    | 2017          |
|------------------|---------------|----|---------|---------------|
| Net sales        | \$<br>286,314 | \$ | 213,757 | \$<br>270,937 |
| Operating income | 30,509        |    | 10,420  | 18,494        |
| Operating margin | 10.7          | %  | 4.9%    | 6.8%          |

Fiscal 2019 Compared to Fiscal 2018. Net sales increased 33.9 percent, or \$72.6 million, over the prior year, due to strong project execution on maturing projects. Operating margin improved 580 basis points over the prior year, due to volume leverage and strong project performance.

Fiscal 2018 Compared to Fiscal 2017. Net sales decreased 21.1 percent, or \$57.2 million, over fiscal 2017, due to year-on-year timing of project activity. Operating margin declined 190 basis points over fiscal 2017, as a result of lower volume leverage on fixed project management, engineering and manufacturing costs, partially offset by favorable project performance.

### Large-Scale Optical Technologies (LSO)

| (In thousands)   |          | 2019 |      | 2018         | 2017         |
|------------------|----------|------|------|--------------|--------------|
| Net sales        | <u> </u> | 88,4 | 93   | \$<br>88,303 | \$<br>89,710 |
| Operating income |          | 23,0 | 03   | 22,000       | 22,467       |
| Operating margin |          | 26   | 5.0% | 24.9%        | 25.0%        |

Fiscal 2019 Compared to Fiscal 2018. Net sales were consistent with the prior year and operating margin improved 110 basis points over the prior year, driven by a \$1.0 million gain from an insurance recovery and good operational performance.

Fiscal 2018 Compared to Fiscal 2017. Net sales decreased 1.6 percent and operating margin declined 10 basis points, compared to fiscal 2017, as productivity gains were offset by unfavorable pricing, mix and volume.

# Liquidity and Capital Resources

| (In thousands)                            | <br>2019     | 2018          | 2017          |
|---|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| Operating Activities                      |              |               |               |
| Net cash provided by operating activities | \$<br>96,423 | \$<br>127,463 | \$<br>124,001 |
| Investing Activities                      |              |               |               |
| Capital expenditures                      | (60,717)     | (53,196)      | (68,061)      |
| Proceeds on sale of property              | 12,333       | 1,394         | 1,729         |
| Acquisition of business and intangibles   | _            | (182,849)     | (137,932)     |
| Financing Activities                      |              |               |               |
| Borrowings on line of credit, net         | 30,000       | 149,960       | 44,988        |
| Repurchase and retirement of common stock | (43,326)     | (33,676)      | (10,817)      |
| Dividends paid                            | (17,864)     | (16,393)      | (14,667)      |

Operating Activities. Cash provided by operating activities was \$96.4 million in fiscal 2019, a decrease of \$31.0 million from fiscal 2018, due to lower net earnings in fiscal 2019 and increased working capital needed to support the acquired project experiencing construction delays.

Investing Activities. Net cash used in investing activities was \$53.7 million in fiscal 2019, compared to \$233.6 million in fiscal 2018, with the year-over-year decline largely due to the acquisition of EFCO in the prior year. In fiscal 2019 and 2018, we made capital expenditures focused primarily on adding product capabilities and improving manufacturing productivity. In fiscal 2019, we also benefited from the sale of an Architectural Glass manufacturing facility in Utah that was closed at the end of fiscal 2018. In fiscal 2017, we acquired Sotawall and made capital expenditures focused on increasing our product capabilities, in particular related to our oversized glass fabrication project, and manufacturing productivity.

We estimate fiscal 2020 capital expenditures to be \$60 to \$65 million, as we continue to make investments to drive growth and productivity improvements.

We continually review our portfolio of businesses and their assets and how they support our business strategy and performance objectives. As part of this review, we may continue to acquire other businesses, pursue geographic expansion, take actions to manage capacity and further invest in, fully divest and/or sell parts of our current businesses.

Financing Activities. We paid dividends totaling \$17.9 million in fiscal 2019. We also repurchased 1,257,983 shares under our authorized share repurchase program, at a total cost of \$43.3 million. We repurchased 702,299 shares under the program in fiscal 2018 and 250,001 shares under the program in fiscal 2017. We have repurchased a total of 5,267,915 shares, at a total cost of \$149.3 million, since the 2004 inception of this program. We have remaining authority to repurchase 1,982,085 shares under this program, which has no expiration date, and we will continue to evaluate making future share repurchases, depending on our cash flow and debt levels, market conditions and other potential uses of cash.

We maintain a \$335.0 million committed revolving credit facility that expires in November 2021, as further described in Note 8 of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements. \$225.0 million was outstanding under this credit facility as of March 2, 2019, as we used this facility to finance the EFCO acquisition. As defined within the credit facility, we have two financial covenants which require us to stay below a maximum leverage ratio and to maintain a minimum interest expense-to-EBITDA ratio. At March 2, 2019, we were in compliance with both financial covenants.

Other Financing Activities. The following summarizes our significant contractual obligations that impact our liquidity as of March 2, 2019:

|                                 | Payments Due by Fiscal Period |    |        |    |         |    |       |    |       |    |           |    |         |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|----|--------|----|---------|----|-------|----|-------|----|-----------|----|---------|
| (In thousands)                  | 2020                          |    | 2021   |    | 2022    |    | 2023  |    | 2024  | T  | hereafter |    | Total   |
| Debt obligations                | \$<br>121                     | \$ | 5,521  | \$ | 227,121 | \$ | 1,082 | \$ |       | \$ | 12,000    | \$ | 245,845 |
| Operating leases (undiscounted) | 14,888                        |    | 11,787 |    | 9,669   |    | 8,772 |    | 6,735 |    | 16,806    |    | 68,657  |
| Purchase obligations            | 121,271                       |    | 9,777  |    | 1,179   |    | _     |    | _     |    | _         |    | 132,227 |
| Total cash obligations          | \$<br>136,280                 | \$ | 27,085 | \$ | 237,969 | \$ | 9,854 | \$ | 6,735 | \$ | 28,806    | \$ | 446,729 |

In addition to the committed revolving credit facility discussed above, we also have industrial revenue bond obligations of \$20.4 million that mature in fiscal years 2021 through 2043 and \$0.4 million of other debt that matures in August 2022.

We acquire the use of certain assets through operating leases, such as warehouses, vehicles, forklifts, office equipment, hardware, software and some manufacturing equipment. While many of these operating leases have termination penalties, we consider the risk related to termination penalties to be minimal.

Purchase obligations in the table above relate to raw material commitments and capital expenditures.

We expect to make contributions of approximately \$0.7 million to our defined-benefit pension plans in fiscal 2020, which will equal or exceed our minimum funding requirements.

As of March 2, 2019, we had reserves of \$4.6 million and \$1.2 million for long-term unrecognized tax benefits and environmental liabilities, respectively. We expect approximately \$0.5 million of the unrecognized tax benefits to lapse during the next 12 months. We are unable to reasonably estimate in which future periods the remaining unrecognized tax benefits and environmental liabilities will ultimately be settled.

At March 2, 2019, we had ongoing letters of credit of \$25.1 million related to industrial revenue bonds and construction contracts that expire in fiscal 2020 and that reduce availability of funds under our committed credit facility.

In addition to the above standby letters of credit, we are required, in the ordinary course of business, to provide surety or performance bonds that commit payments to our customers for any non-performance. At March 2, 2019, \$313.2 million of our backlog was bonded by performance bonds with a face value of \$570.6 million. These bonds do not have stated expiration dates, as we are released from the bonds upon completion of the contract. We have not been required to make any payments under these bonds with respect to our existing businesses.

We had total cash and short-term marketable securities of \$17.1 million, and \$84.9 million available under our committed revolving credit facility, at March 2, 2019. Due to our ability to generate cash from operations and our borrowing capacity under our committed revolving credit facility, we believe that our sources of liquidity will continue to be adequate to fund our working capital requirements, planned capital expenditures and dividend payments for at least the next 12 months.

Off-balance Sheet Arrangements. With the exception of operating leases, we had no off-balance sheet arrangements at March 2, 2019 or March 3, 2018.

#### Outlook

The following statements are based on our current expectations for fiscal 2020 results. These statements are forward-looking, and actual results may differ materially.

- · Revenue growth of 1.0 to 3.0 percent over fiscal 2019.
- Operating margin of 8.2 to 8.6 percent.
- Earnings per diluted share of \$3.00 to \$3.20.
- · Capital expenditures of approximately \$60 to \$65 million.
- · Effective annual tax rate of approximately 24.5 percent.

### Recently Issued Accounting Pronouncements

See Note 1 of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements within Item 8 of this Form 10-K for information pertaining to recently issued accounting pronouncements, incorporated herein by reference.

### **Critical Accounting Policies**

Our analysis of operations and financial condition is based on our consolidated financial statements prepared in accordance with U.S. GAAP. Preparation of these consolidated financial statements requires us to make estimates and assumptions affecting the reported amounts of assets and liabilities at the date of the consolidated financial statements, reported amounts of revenues and expenses during the reporting period and related disclosures of contingent assets and liabilities. In developing these estimates and assumptions, a collaborative effort is undertaken involving management across the organization, including finance, sales, project management, quality, risk, legal and tax, as well as outside advisors, such as consultants, engineers, lawyers and actuaries. Our estimates are evaluated on an ongoing basis and are drawn from historical experience and other assumptions that we believe to be reasonable under the circumstances. Actual results could differ under other assumptions or circumstances.

We consider the following items in our consolidated financial statements to require significant estimation or judgment.

#### Revenue recognition

We generate revenue from the design, engineering and fabrication of architectural glass, curtainwall, window, storefront and entrance systems, and from installing those products on commercial buildings. We also manufacture value-added glass and acrylic products. Due to the diverse nature of our operations and various types of contracts with customers, we have businesses that recognize revenue over time and businesses that recognize revenue at a point in time. We believe the most significant areas of estimation and judgment relate to over-time revenue recognition on longer-term contracts.

We have three businesses which operate under long-term, fixed-price contracts, representing approximately 34 percent of our total revenue in fiscal 2019. This includes one business which changed revenue recognition practices due to the adoption of the new guidance in ASC 606, moving from recognizing revenue at shipment to an over-time method of revenue recognition. The contracts for these businesses have a single, bundled performance obligation, as these businesses generally provide interrelated products and services and integrate these products and services into a combined output specified by the customer. The customer obtains control of this combined output, generally integrated window systems or installed window and curtainwall systems, over time. We measure progress on these contracts following an input method, by comparing total costs incurred to-date to the total estimated costs for the contract, and record that proportion of the total contract price as revenue in the period. Contract costs include materials, labor and other direct costs related to contract performance. We believe this method of recognizing revenue is consistent with our progress in satisfying our contract obligations.

Due to the nature of the work required under these long-term contracts, the estimation of total revenue and costs incurred throughout a project is subject to many variables and requires significant judgment. It is common for these contracts to contain potential bonuses or penalties which are generally awarded or charged upon certain project milestones or cost or timing targets, and can be based on customer discretion. We estimate variable consideration at the most likely amount to which we expect to be entitled. We include estimated amounts in the transaction price to the extent that it is probable that a significant reversal of cumulative revenue recognized will not occur when the uncertainty associated with the variable consideration is resolved. Our estimates of variable consideration and determination of whether to include estimated amounts in the transaction price are based largely on our assessments of anticipated performance and all information (historical, current and forecasted) that is reasonably available to us.

Long-term contracts are often modified to account for changes in contract specifications and requirements of work to be performed. We consider contract modifications to exist when the modification, generally through a change order, either creates new or changes existing enforceable rights and obligations, and we evaluate these types of modifications to determine whether they may be considered distinct performance obligations. In many cases, these contract modifications are for goods or services that are not distinct from the existing contract, due to the significant integration service provided in the context of the contract. Therefore, these modifications are accounted for as part of the existing contract. The effect of a contract modification on the transaction price and our measure of progress is recognized as an adjustment to revenue, generally on a cumulative catch-up basis.

#### Goodwill and indefinite-lived intangible asset impairment

#### Goodwill

We evaluate goodwill for impairment annually at our year-end, or more frequently if events or changes in circumstances indicate that the asset might be impaired. This year we elected to bypass the qualitative assessment process and to proceed directly to comparing the fair value of each of our reporting units to carrying value, including goodwill. If the fair value exceeds the carrying value, goodwill impairment is not indicated. Each of our nine businesses (or business units) represents a reporting unit for the goodwill impairment analysis. For our goodwill impairment testing beginning in fiscal 2018, we elected to early adopt Accounting Standards Update No. 2017-04, Simplifying the Test for Goodwill Impairment. As a result of this election, if the carrying amount of a reporting unit would be determined to be higher than its estimated fair value, an impairment loss is recognized for the excess.

We base our determination of fair value on a discounted cash flow methodology that involves significant judgment and projections of future performance. Assumptions about future revenues and expenses, capital expenditures and changes in working capital are based on the annual operating plan and long-term business plan for each business unit. These plans take into consideration numerous factors, including historical experience, anticipated future economic conditions and growth expectations for the industries and end markets in which we participate. Growth rates for revenues and operating profits vary for each reporting unit. The discount rate assumption is consistent across business units and takes into consideration an estimated weighted-average cost of capital.

Based on our analysis, the estimated fair value of each reporting unit exceeded its carrying value and, therefore, goodwill impairment was not indicated. However, for two of our businesses within the Architectural Framing Systems segment with goodwill of approximately \$111.5 million, fair value did not exceed carrying value by a significant margin. We utilized a discount rate of 10.9 percent in determining the discounted cash flows in our fair value analysis and a perpetual growth rate of 3.0 percent. If our

discount rate were to increase by 120 basis points, the fair value of these reporting units could fall below carrying value, which would indicate impairment of the goodwill.

### Indefinite-lived intangible assets

We hold intangible assets for certain acquired tradenames and trademarks which are determined to have indefinite useful lives. We evaluate the reasonableness of the useful life and test indefinite-lived intangible assets for impairment annually at our year-end, or more frequently if events or changes in circumstances indicate that it is more likely than not that the asset is impaired. We bypassed a qualitative assessment and performed a quantitative impairment test to compare the fair value of each indefinite-lived intangible asset exceeds its fair value, an impairment loss is recognized in an amount equal to that excess. After an impairment loss is recognized, the adjusted carrying amount becomes the asset's new accounting basis.

Fair value is measured using the relief-from-royalty method. This method assumes the trade name or mark has value to the extent that the owner is relieved of the obligation to pay royalties for the benefits received from them. This method requires us to estimate the future revenue from the related asset, the appropriate royalty rate, and the weighted average cost of capital. The assessment of fair value involves significant judgment and projections about future performance. In determining the discounted future revenue in our fair value analysis, we assumed a discount rate of 10.9 percent, a royalty rate of 1.0 percent, and a perpetual growth rate of 3.0 percent. Based on our analysis, the fair value of one of our tradenames, with a carrying value of \$32.4 million, was below its estimated fair value by \$3.1 million and therefore we recorded this amount as an impairment charge in fiscal 2019. We continue to conclude that the useful life of our indefinite-lived intangible assets is appropriate.

### Reserves for disputes and claims regarding product liability, warranties and other project-related contingencies

We are subject to claims associated with our products and services, principally as a result of disputes with our customers involving the performance or aesthetics of our products, some of which may be covered under our warranty policies. We also are subject to project management and installation-related contingencies as a result of our fixed-price material supply and installation service contracts, primarily in our Architectural Services segment and certain of our Architectural Framing Systems businesses, including those taken on with our acquisition of EFCO. The time period from when a claim is asserted to when it is resolved, either by dismissal, negotiation, settlement or litigation, can be several years. While we maintain various types of product liability insurance, the insurance policies include significant self-retention of risk in the form of policy deductibles. In addition, certain claims could be determined to be uninsured. We also actively manage the risk of these exposures through contract negotiations and proactive project management.

We reserve estimated exposures on known claims, as well as on a portion of anticipated claims for product warranty and rework costs, based on historical product liability claims, as a ratio of sales. We also reserve for estimated exposures on other claims as they are known and reasonably estimable.

#### ITEM 7A. QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE DISCLOSURES ABOUT MARKET RISK

We are exposed to ongoing market risk related to changes in interest rates and foreign currency exchange rates.

A rise in interest rates could negatively affect the fair value of our fixed income investments, while serving to provide greater long-term return potential on these investments. To manage our direct risk from changes in market interest rates, we actively monitor the interest-sensitive components of our balance sheet, primarily available-for-sale securities, fixed income securities and debt obligations, and maintain a diversified portfolio in order to minimize the impact of changes in interest rates on net earnings and cash flow. We do not hold any financial instruments for trading purposes, and we currently do not use derivative financial instruments to manage interest rate risk. We also diversify and manage our investment portfolio in order to limit the impact of potential credit risk.

The primary measure of interest rate risk is the simulation of net income under different interest rate environments. If interest rates were to increase or decrease over the next 12 months by 200 basis points, net earnings would be impacted by approximately \$1.5 million. Our debt exceeded investments at March 2, 2019, so as interest rates increase, net earnings decrease; as interest rates decrease, net earnings increase.

In addition to the market risk related to interest rate changes on our financial instruments, the commercial construction markets in which our businesses operate are highly affected by changes in interest rates. Increases in interest rates could adversely impact activity in the commercial construction industry and our operating results.

We are subject to market risk due to changes in the value of foreign currencies in relation to our reporting currency, the U.S. dollar.

We have operations in Canada and Brazil, which primarily transact business in local currencies. We manage these operating activities locally. Revenues, costs, assets and liabilities of these operations are generally denominated in local currencies, thereby mitigating some of the risk associated with changes in foreign exchange rates. However, our consolidated financial results are reported in U.S. dollars. Thus, changes in exchange rates between the Canadian dollar and Brazilian real, on the one hand, and the U.S. dollar, on the other, will impact our results. From time to time, we enter into forward purchase foreign currency contracts, generally with an original maturity date of less than one year, to hedge foreign currency risk (refer to additional discussion within Note 5 of the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements). Sales from our domestic operations are generally denominated in U.S. dollars.

### ITEM 8. FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AND SUPPLEMENTARY DATA

### Management's Annual Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting

Management of Apogee Enterprises, Inc. and its subsidiaries (the Company) is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting, as such term is defined in Rules 13a-15(f) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. The Company's internal control over financial reporting is designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. The Company's internal control over financial reporting includes those policies and procedures that (1) pertain to maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets of the Company; (2) provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of the financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and that receipts and expenditures of the Company are being made only in accordance with authorizations of management and directors of the Company; and (3) provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use or disposition of the Company's assets that could have a material effect on the financial statements.

Because of inherent limitations, internal control over financial reporting may not prevent or detect misstatements. Also, projections of any evaluation of the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting to future periods are subject to the risk that the controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.

The Company's management assessed the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting as of March 2, 2019, using criteria set forth by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO) in Internal Control - Integrated Framework (2013). The Company's management believes that, as of March 2, 2019, the Company's internal control over financial reporting was effective based on those criteria.

Following this report are reports from the Company's independent registered public accounting firm, Deloitte & Touche LLP, on the Company's consolidated financial statements and on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting as of March 2, 2019.

#### REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

To the Board of Directors and Shareholders of Apogee Enterprises, Inc.

#### Opinion on the Financial Statements

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of Apogee Enterprises, Inc. and subsidiaries (the "Company") as of March 2, 2019 and March 3, 2018, and the related consolidated results of operations, statements of comprehensive earnings, statements of cash flows, and statements of shareholders' equity, for each of the three years in the period ended March 2, 2019, and the related notes and the financial statement schedule listed in the Table of Contents at Item 15 (collectively referred to as the "financial statements"). In our opinion, the financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company as of March 2, 2019 and March 3, 2018, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended March 2, 2019, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

We have also audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (PCAOB), the Company's internal control over financial reporting as of March 2, 2019, based on criteria established in *Internal Control - Integrated Framework (2013)* issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission and our report dated April 26, 2019, expressed an unqualified opinion on the Company's internal control over financial reporting.

#### **Basis for Opinion**

These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company's financial statements based on our audits. We are a public accounting firm registered with the PCAOB and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud. Our audits included performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures that respond to those risks. Such procedures included examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. Our audits also included evaluating the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

/s/ Deloitte & Touche LLP

Minneapolis, MN April 26, 2019

We have served as the Company's auditor since 2003.

#### REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

To the Board of Directors and Shareholders of Apogee Enterprises, Inc.

#### Opinion on Internal Control over Financial Reporting

We have audited the internal control over financial reporting of Apogee Enterprises, Inc. and subsidiaries (the "Company") as of March 2, 2019, based on criteria established in *Internal Control - Integrated Framework* (2013) issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO). In our opinion, the Company maintained, in all material respects, effective internal control over financial reporting as of March 2, 2019, based on criteria established in *Internal Control - Integrated Framework* (2013) issued by COSO.

We have also audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (PCAOB), the consolidated financial statements as of and for the year ended March 2, 2019, of the Company and our report dated April 26, 2019, expressed an unqualified opinion on those financial statements.

#### **Basis for Opinion**

The Company's management is responsible for maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting and for its assessment of the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting, included in the accompanying Management's Annual Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting. Our registered with the PCAOB and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audit in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether effective internal control over financial reporting was maintained in all material respects. Our audit included obtaining an understanding of internal control over financial reporting, assessing the risk that a material weakness exists, testing and evaluating the design and operating effectiveness of internal control based on the assessed risk, and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

# Definition and Limitations of Internal Control over Financial Reporting

A company's internal control over financial reporting is a process designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. A company's internal control over financial reporting includes those policies and procedures that (1) pertain to the maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets of the company; (2) provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and that receipts and expenditures of the company are being made only in accordance with authorizations of management and directors of the company; and (3) provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use, or disposition of the company's assets that could have a material effect on the financial statements.

Because of its inherent limitations, internal control over financial reporting may not prevent or detect misstatements. Also, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.

/s/ Deloitte & Touche LLP

Minneapolis, MN April 26, 2019

# CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEETS

| (In thousands, except per share data)   |    | Iarch 2, 2019 |    | March 3, 2018 |
|---|----|---------------|----|---------------|
| Assets  |    |               |    |               |
| Current assets  | •  | 15.005        | •  | 10.250        |
| Cash and cash equivalents   | \$ | 17,087        | \$ | 19,359        |
| Restricted cash   |    | 12,154        |    | _             |
| Receivables, net of allowance for doubtful accounts   |    | 192,767       |    | 211,852       |
| Inventories   |    | 78,344        |    | 80,908        |
| Costs and earnings on contracts in excess of billings   |    | 55,095        |    | 4,120         |
| Other current assets  |    | 16,451        |    | 20,039        |
| Total current assets  |    | 371,898       |    | 336,278       |
| Property, plant and equipment, net  |    | 315,823       |    | 304,063       |
| Goodwill  |    | 185,832       |    | 180,956       |
| Intangible assets   |    | 148,235       |    | 167,349       |
| Other non-current assets  |    | 46,380        |    | 33,674        |
| Total assets  | \$ | 1,068,168     | \$ | 1,022,320     |
| Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity  |    |               |    |               |
| Current liabilities   |    |               |    |               |
| Accounts payable  | \$ | 72,219        | \$ | 68,416        |
| Accrued payroll and related benefits  |    | 41,119        |    | 36,646        |
| Accrued self-insurance reserves   |    | 9,537         |    | 10,933        |
| Billings in excess of costs and earnings on uncompleted contracts   |    | 21,478        |    | 12,461        |
| Other current liabilities   |    | 83,159        |    | 79,696        |
| Total current liabilities   |    | 227,512       |    | 208,152       |
| Long-term debt  |    | 245,724       |    | 215,860       |
| Long-term self-insurance reserves   |    | 21,433        |    | 16,307        |
| Other non-current liabilities   |    | 77,182        |    | 70,646        |
| Commitments and contingent liabilities (Note 10)  |    |               |    |               |
| Shareholders' equity  |    |               |    |               |
| Common stock of \$0.33-1/3 par value; authorized 50,000,000 shares; issued and outstanding 27,015,127 and 28,158,042 shares, respectively |    | 9,005         |    | 9,386         |
| Additional paid-in capital  |    | 151,842       |    | 152,763       |
| Retained earnings   |    | 367,597       |    | 373,259       |
| Common stock held in trust  |    | (755)         |    | (922)         |
| Deferred compensation obligations   |    | 755           |    | 922           |
| Accumulated other comprehensive loss  |    | (32,127)      |    | (24,053)      |
| Total shareholders' equity  |    | 496,317       |    | 511,355       |
| Total liabilities and shareholders' equity  | \$ | 1,068,168     | \$ | 1,022,320     |

See accompanying notes to consolidated financial statements.

# CONSOLIDATED RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

|  |                 | Year-Ended      |          |               |  |
|--|-----------------|-----------------|----------|---------------|--|
|  | March 2, 2019   | March 3, 2018   |          | March 4, 2017 |  |
| (In thousands, except per share data)        | (52 weeks)      | (52 weeks)      | 2 weeks) |               |  |
| Net sales                                    | \$<br>1,402,637 | \$<br>1,326,173 | \$       | 1,114,533     |  |
| Cost of sales                                | 1,109,072       | 992,655         |          | 822,510       |  |
| Gross profit                                 | 293,565         | 333,518         |          | 292,023       |  |
| Selling, general and administrative expenses | 226,281         | 219,234         |          | 169,798       |  |
| Operating income                             | 67,284          | 114,284         |          | 122,225       |  |
| Interest income                              | 355             | 538             |          | 1,008         |  |
| Interest expense                             | 8,449           | 5,508           |          | 971           |  |
| Other (expense) income, net                  | (528)           | 566             |          | 543           |  |
| Earnings before income taxes                 | 58,662          | 109,880         |          | 122,805       |  |
| Income tax expense                           | 12,968          | 30,392          |          | 37,015        |  |
| Net earnings                                 | \$<br>45,694    | \$<br>79,488    | \$       | 85,790        |  |
| Earnings per share - basic                   | \$<br>1.64      | \$<br>2.79      | \$       | 2.98          |  |
| Earnings per share - diluted                 | \$<br>1.63      | \$<br>2.76      | \$       | 2.97          |  |
| Weighted average basic shares outstanding    | 27,802          | 28,534          |          | 28,781        |  |
| Weighted average diluted shares outstanding  | 28,082          | 28,804          |          | 28,893        |  |

See accompanying notes to consolidated financial statements.

# CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF COMPREHENSIVE EARNINGS

|  | Year-Ended       |           |    |                  |    |                  |  |
|--|------------------|-----------|----|------------------|----|------------------|--|
|  | March 2,<br>2019 |           |    | March 3,<br>2018 |    | March 4,<br>2017 |  |
| (In thousands)   | (                | 52 weeks) |    | (52 weeks)       |    | (53 weeks)       |  |
| Net earnings   | \$               | 45,694    | \$ | 79,488           | \$ | 85,790           |  |
| Other comprehensive (loss) earnings:   |                  |           |    |                  |    |                  |  |
| Unrealized gain (loss) on marketable securities, net of \$17, \$(29) and \$(45) of tax expense (benefit), respectively |                  | 64        |    | (95)             |    | (83)             |  |
| Unrealized (loss) gain on foreign currency hedge, net of \$(172), \$47 and \$- of tax (benefit) expense, respectively  |                  | (565)     |    | 156              |    | _                |  |
| Unrealized gain on pension obligation, net of \$72, \$87 and \$74 of tax expense, respectively                         |                  | 229       |    | 284              |    | 130              |  |
| Foreign currency translation adjustments   |                  | (7,065)   |    | 6,692            |    | 234              |  |
| Other comprehensive (loss) earnings  |                  | (7,337)   |    | 7,037            |    | 281              |  |
| Total comprehensive earnings   | \$               | 38,357    | \$ | 86,525           | \$ | 86,071           |  |

 $See\ accompanying\ notes\ to\ consolidated\ financial\ statements.$ 

# CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS

|   |             |                  |                                | Year-Ended |    |                  |  |  |
|---|-------------|------------------|--------------------------------|------------|----|------------------|--|--|
|   |             | March 2,<br>2019 | March 3,<br>2018<br>(52 weeks) |            |    | March 4,<br>2017 |  |  |
| (In thousands)  |             | 52 weeks)        |                                |            |    | (53 weeks)       |  |  |
| Operating Activities  |             |                  |                                |            |    |                  |  |  |
| Net earnings  | \$          | 45,694           | \$                             | 79,488     | \$ | 85,790           |  |  |
| Adjustments to reconcile net earnings to net cash provided by operating activities: |             |                  |                                |            |    |                  |  |  |
| Depreciation and amortization   |             | 49,798           |                                | 54,843     |    | 35,607           |  |  |
| Share-based compensation  |             | 6,286            |                                | 6,205      |    | 5,986            |  |  |
| Deferred income taxes   |             | (5,506)          |                                | 3,195      |    | (1,065           |  |  |
| (Loss) gain on disposal of assets   |             | (2,475)          |                                | 1,037      |    | (371             |  |  |
| Impairment on intangible assets   |             | 3,141            |                                | _          |    |                  |  |  |
| Proceeds from new markets tax credit transaction, net of deferred costs             |             | 8,850            |                                | _          |    | 5,109            |  |  |
| Other, net  |             | (2,179)          |                                | (1,431)    |    | (2,331           |  |  |
| Changes in operating assets and liabilities:  |             |                  |                                |            |    |                  |  |  |
| Receivables   |             | 18,164           |                                | 18,172     |    | 3,460            |  |  |
| Inventories   |             | 5,114            |                                | 10,387     |    | (10,318          |  |  |
| Costs and earnings on contracts in excess of billings                               |             | (48,712)         |                                | 1,134      |    | 3,931            |  |  |
| Accounts payable and accrued expenses   |             | 7,600            |                                | (25,627)   |    | 17,449           |  |  |
| Billings in excess of costs and earnings on uncompleted contracts                   |             | 9,026            |                                | (16,541)   |    | (9,991           |  |  |
| Refundable and accrued income taxes   |             | 3,680            |                                | 315        |    | (9,647           |  |  |
| Other, net  |             | (2,058)          |                                | (3,714)    |    | 392              |  |  |
| Net cash provided by operating activities   |             | 96,423           |                                | 127,463    |    | 124,001          |  |  |
| Investing Activities  |             |                  |                                |            |    |                  |  |  |
| Capital expenditures  |             | (60,717)         |                                | (53,196)   |    | (68,061          |  |  |
| Purchases of marketable securities  |             | (9,213)          |                                | (10,244)   |    | (3,705           |  |  |
| Sales/maturities of marketable securities   |             | 6,110            |                                | 10,476     |    | 36,433           |  |  |
| Proceeds from sales of property, plant and equipment                                |             | 12,333           |                                | 1,394      |    | 1,729            |  |  |
| Acquisition of business and intangibles   |             | _                |                                | (182,849)  |    | (137,932         |  |  |
| Other, net  |             | (2,209)          |                                | 851        |    | (4,388           |  |  |
| Net cash used in investing activities   |             | (53,696)         |                                | (233,568)  |    | (175,924         |  |  |
| Financing Activities  |             | (22,020)         | -                              | (===;===)  |    | (2,2,2           |  |  |
| Borrowings on line of credit  |             | 363,000          |                                | 385,700    |    | 121,000          |  |  |
| Payments on line of credit  |             | (333,000)        |                                | (235,740)  |    | (76,012          |  |  |
| Shares withheld for taxes, net of stock issued to employees                         |             | (1,531)          |                                | (1,712)    |    | (446             |  |  |
| Repurchase and retirement of common stock   |             | (43,326)         |                                | (33,676)   |    | (10,817          |  |  |
| Dividends paid  |             | (17,864)         |                                | (16,393)   |    | (14,667          |  |  |
| Other, net  |             | 395              |                                | 155        |    | (396             |  |  |
| Net cash (used in) provided by financing activities                                 |             | (32,326)         | _                              | 98,334     | _  | 18,662           |  |  |
|   | <del></del> | /                |                                |            | _  |                  |  |  |
| Increase (decrease) in cash and cash equivalents                                    |             | 10,401           |                                | (7,771)    |    | (33,261          |  |  |
| Effect of exchange rates on cash  |             | (519)            |                                | (167)      |    | 60.470           |  |  |
| Cash, cash equivalents and restricted cash at beginning of year                     |             | 19,359           | _                              | 27,297     | Φ. | 60,470           |  |  |
| Cash, cash equivalents and restricted cash at end of period                         | \$          | 29,241           | \$                             | 19,359     | \$ | 27,297           |  |  |
| Noncash Activity  |             |                  |                                |            |    |                  |  |  |
| Capital expenditures in accounts payable  | \$          | 1,703            | \$                             | 1,784      | \$ | 3,254            |  |  |
| Deferred payments on acquisition of business  |             | _                |                                | 7,500      |    | _                |  |  |

 $See\ accompanying\ notes\ to\ consolidated\ financial\ statements.$ 

# Consolidated Statements of Shareholders' Equity

| (In thousands, except per share data)                                  | Common Shares<br>Outstanding | Common Stock | Additional<br>Paid-In Capital |    | Retained<br>Earnings | Common Stock<br>Held in Trust | Deferred<br>Compensation<br>Obligation | Co       | Other<br>omprehensive |
|--|------------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------|----|----------------------|-------------------------------|--|----------|-----------------------|
| Balance at February 27, 2016   | 28,684                       | \$ 9,561     | \$ 145,528                    | \$ | 282,477              | \$ (837)                      | s 837                                  | <u>s</u> | (31,371)              |
| Net earnings   |                              | _            | _                             |    | 85,790               | `_                            | _                                      |          | _                     |
| Unrealized loss on marketable securities, net of \$45 tax benefit      | _                            | _            | _                             |    | _                    | _                             | _                                      |          | (83)                  |
| Unrealized gain on pension obligation, net of \$74 tax expense         | _                            | _            | _                             |    | _                    | _                             | _                                      |          | 130                   |
| Foreign currency translation adjustments                               | _                            | _            | _                             |    | _                    | _                             | _                                      |          | 234                   |
| Issuance of stock, net of cancellations                                | 140                          | 47           | 105                           |    | 36                   | (38)                          | 38                                     |          | _                     |
| Share-based compensation   | _                            | _            | 5,986                         |    | _                    | _                             | _                                      |          | _                     |
| Tax deficit associated with stock plans                                | _                            | _            | (1,745)                       |    | _                    | _                             | _                                      |          | _                     |
| Exercise of stock options  | 163                          | 54           | 1,893                         |    | _                    | _                             | _                                      |          | _                     |
| Share repurchases  | (250)                        | (83)         | (1,357)                       |    | (9,377)              | _                             | _                                      |          | _                     |
| Other share retirements  | (57)                         | (19)         | (299)                         |    | (2,263)              | _                             | _                                      |          | _                     |
| Cash dividends (\$0.515 per share)                                     | _                            | _            | _                             |    | (14,667)             | _                             | _                                      |          | _                     |
| Balance at March 4, 2017   | 28,680                       | \$ 9,560     | \$ 150,111                    | \$ | 341,996              | \$ (875)                      | \$ 875                                 | \$       | (31,090)              |
| Net earnings   | _                            | _            | _                             |    | 79,488               | _                             | _                                      |          | _                     |
| Unrealized loss on marketable securities, net of \$29 tax benefit      | _                            | _            | _                             |    | _                    | _                             | _                                      |          | (95)                  |
| Unrealized gain on foreign currency hedge, net of \$47 tax expense     | _                            | _            | _                             |    | _                    | _                             | _                                      |          | 156                   |
| Unrealized gain on pension obligation, net of \$87 tax expense         | _                            | _            | _                             |    | _                    | _                             | _                                      |          | 284                   |
| Foreign currency translation adjustments                               | _                            | _            | _                             |    | _                    | _                             | _                                      |          | 6,692                 |
| Issuance of stock, net of cancellations                                | 128                          | 43           | (186)                         |    | 208                  | (47)                          | 47                                     |          | _                     |
| Share-based compensation   | _                            | _            | 6,205                         |    | _                    | _                             | _                                      |          | _                     |
| Tax deficit associated with stock plans                                | _                            | _            | _                             |    | _                    | _                             | _                                      |          | _                     |
| Exercise of stock options  | 102                          | 34           | 800                           |    | _                    | _                             | _                                      |          | _                     |
| Share repurchases  | (702)                        | (234)        | (3,886)                       |    | (29,556)             | _                             | _                                      |          | _                     |
| Other share retirements  | (50)                         | (17)         | (281)                         |    | (2,484)              | _                             | _                                      |          | _                     |
| Cash dividends (\$0.5775 per share)                                    |                              |              |                               |    | (16,393)             |                               |  |          | _                     |
| Balance at March 3, 2018   | 28,158                       | \$ 9,386     | \$ 152,763                    | \$ | 373,259              | \$ (922)                      | \$ 922                                 | \$       | (24,053)              |
| Net earnings   | _                            | _            | _                             |    | 45,694               | _                             | _                                      |          | _                     |
| Cumulative effect adjustment (see Note 1)                              | _                            | _            | _                             |    | 2,999                | _                             | _                                      |          | _                     |
| Unrealized gain on marketable securities, net of \$17 tax expense      | _                            | _            | _                             |    | _                    | _                             | _                                      |          | 64                    |
| Unrealized loss on foreign currency hedge, net of \$172 tax<br>benefit | _                            | _            | _                             |    | _                    | _                             | _                                      |          | (565)                 |
| Unrealized gain on pension obligation, net of \$72 tax expense         | _                            | _            | _                             |    | _                    | _                             | _                                      |          | 229                   |
| Foreign currency translation adjustments                               | _                            | _            | _                             |    | _                    | _                             | _                                      |          | (7,065)               |
| Reclassification of tax effects (see Note 1)                           | _                            | _            | _                             |    | 737                  | _                             | _                                      |          | (737)                 |
| Issuance of stock, net of cancellations                                | 135                          | 45           | 80                            |    | 145                  | 167                           | (167)                                  |          | _                     |
| Share-based compensation   | _                            | _            | 6,286                         |    | _                    | _                             | _                                      |          | _                     |
| Exercise of stock options  | 19                           | 6            | 177                           |    | _                    | _                             | _                                      |          | _                     |
| Share repurchases  | (1,258)                      | (419)        | (7,204)                       |    | (35,703)             | _                             | _                                      |          | _                     |
| Other share retirements  | (39)                         | (13)         | (260)                         |    | (1,670)              | _                             | _                                      |          | _                     |
| Cash dividends (\$0.6475 per share)                                    |                              |              |                               | _  | (17,864)             |                               |  |          | _                     |
| Balance at March 2, 2019   | 27,015                       | \$ 9,005     | \$ 151,842                    | \$ | 367,597              | \$ (755)                      | s 755                                  | s        | (32,127)              |

See accompanying notes to consolidated financial statements.

#### NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

#### 1. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies and Related Data

#### Basis of consolidation

The consolidated financial statements include the balances of Apogee Enterprises, Inc. and its subsidiaries (Apogee, we, us, our or the Company) after elimination of intercompany balances and transactions. We consolidate variable interest entities related to our New Market Tax Credit transactions as it has been determined that the Company is the primary beneficiary of those entities' operations (refer to Note 10 for more information).

#### Fiscal year

Our fiscal year ends on the Saturday closest to the last day of February, or as determined by the Board of Directors. Fiscal 2019 and 2018 each consisted of 52 weeks, while fiscal 2017 consisted of 53 weeks.

#### Accounting estimates

The preparation of the consolidated financial statements in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts in the consolidated financial statements and accompanying notes. Actual results could differ significantly from those estimates.

#### Cash equivalents

Highly liquid investments with an original maturity of three months or less are included in cash equivalents and are stated at cost, which approximates fair value

#### Marketable securities

Our marketable securities are classified as available for sale, and we test for other-than-temporary losses on a quarterly basis or whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amount of a security may not be recoverable. We consider all unrealized losses to be temporary in nature. We intend to hold our securities until the full principal amount can be recovered, and we have the ability to do so based on other sources of liquidity. Marketable securities are included in other current and non-current assets on the consolidated balance sheets and gross realized gains and losses are included in other income (expense) in our consolidated results of operations.

#### Inventories

Inventories, which consist primarily of purchased glass and aluminum, are valued at lower of cost or market using the first-in, first-out (FIFO) method.

### Property, plant and equipment

Property, plant and equipment (PP&E) is recorded at cost. Significant improvements and renewals that extend the useful life of the asset are capitalized. Repairs and maintenance are charged to expense as incurred. When an asset is retired or otherwise disposed of, the cost and related accumulated depreciation are removed from the accounts and any related gains or losses are included in selling, general and administrative expenses. Long-lived assets to be held and used, such as PP&E, are reviewed for impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amount may not be recoverable.

Depreciation is computed on a straight-line basis, based on estimated useful lives of 10 to 25 years for buildings and improvements; 3 to 15 years for machinery and equipment; and 3 to 7 years for office equipment and furniture.

# Goodwill and intangible assets

Goodwill represents the excess of the cost over the net tangible and identified intangible assets of acquired businesses. We evaluate goodwill for impairment annually at our year-end, or more frequently if impairment indicators exist. This year we elected to bypass the qualitative assessment process and to proceed directly to comparing the fair value of each of our reporting units to carrying value, including goodwill. If the fair value exceeds the carrying value, goodwill impairment is not indicated. Each of our nine business units represents a reporting unit for the goodwill impairment analysis. We have followed a consistent discounted cash flow methodology to evaluate goodwill in all periods presented.

We base our determination of fair value on a discounted cash flow methodology that involves significant judgment and projections of future performance. Assumptions about future revenues and expenses, capital expenditures and changes in working capital are based on the annual operating plan and long-term business plan for each reporting unit. These plans take into consideration numerous factors, including historical experience, anticipated future economic conditions and growth expectations for the industries and end markets in which we participate. Growth rates for revenues and operating profits vary for each reporting unit. The discount

rate assumption for each reporting unit takes into consideration our assessment of risks inherent in the future cash flows of our business and an estimated weighted-average cost of capital.

Intangible assets with indefinite useful lives are tested for impairment annually at our year-end, or more frequently if events or changes in circumstances indicate that it is more likely than not that the asset is impaired. If the carrying amount of an indefinite-lived intangible asset exceeds its fair value, an impairment loss is recognized in an amount equal to that excess. Fair value is measured using the relief-from-royalty method. This method assumes the trade name or mark has value to the extent that the owner is relieved of the obligation to pay royalties for the benefits received from them. This method requires us to estimate the future revenue from the related asset, the appropriate royalty rate, and the weighted average cost of capital. The assessment of fair value involves significant judgment and projections about future performance.

Definite-lived intangible assets are amortized based on estimated useful lives ranging from 18 months to 20 years and are reviewed for impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amount may not be recoverable. The estimated useful lives of all intangible assets are reviewed annually, and we have determined that the remaining lives were appropriate.

#### Self-Insurance

We obtain commercial insurance to provide coverage for potential losses in areas such as employment practices, workers' compensation, directors and officers, automobile, architect's and engineer's errors and omissions, product rework and general liability. A substantial portion of this risk is retained on a self-insured basis through our wholly-owned insurance subsidiary. We establish a reserve for estimated ultimate losses on reported claims and those incurred but not yet reported utilizing actuarial projections. Reserves are classified within accrued or long-term self-insurance reserves based on expectations of when the estimated loss will be paid.

Additionally, we maintain a self-insurance reserve for health insurance programs offered to eligible employees, included within accrued self-insurance reserves. The reserve includes an estimate for losses on reported claims as well as for amounts incurred but not yet reported, based on historical trends.

### Warranty and project-related contingencies

We are subject to claims associated with our products and services, principally as a result of disputes with our customers involving the performance or aesthetics of our architectural products and services. We reserve estimated exposures on known claims, as well as on a portion of anticipated claims for product warranty and rework costs, based on historical product liability claims as a ratio of sales. We also reserve for estimated exposures on other claims as they are known and reasonably estimable. Reserves are included in other current and non-current liabilities based on the estimated timing of dispute resolution

#### Foreign currency

Local currencies are considered the functional currencies for our subsidiaries outside of the United States. Assets and liabilities of these subsidiaries are translated at the exchange rates at the balance sheet date. Income and expense items are translated using average monthly exchange rates. Translation adjustments are included in accumulated other comprehensive loss in the consolidated balance sheets.

#### Derivatives and hedging activities

We periodically enter into forward purchase foreign currency contracts, generally with an original maturity date of less than one year, to hedge foreign currency exchange rate risk. All derivative instruments within the scope of ASC 815, Derivatives and Hedging, are recorded on the consolidated balance sheets at fair value. All hedging instruments that qualify for hedge accounting are designated and effective as hedges. Instruments that do not qualify for hedge accounting are marked to market with changes recognized in current earnings. Cash flows from derivative instruments are classified in the statements of cash flows in the same category as the cash flows from the items subject to designated hedge or undesignated (economic) hedge relationships. We do not hold or issue derivative financial instruments for trading purposes and are not a party to leveraged derivatives.

#### Revenue recognition

On March 4, 2018, we adopted ASC 606, Revenue from Contracts with Customers, and as a result, made updates to our significant accounting policy for revenue recognition. We generate revenue from the design, engineering and fabrication of architectural glass, curtainwall, window, storefront and entrance systems, and from installing those products on commercial buildings. We also manufacture value-added glass and acrylic products. Due to the diverse nature of our operations and various types of contracts with customers, we have businesses that recognize revenue over time and businesses that recognize revenue at a point in time.

During fiscal 2019, approximately 44 percent of our total revenue is recognized at the time products are shipped from our manufacturing facilities, which is when control is transferred to our customer, consistent with past practices. These businesses do

not generate contract-related assets or liabilities. Variable consideration associated with these contracts and orders, generally related to early pay discounts or volume rebates, is not considered significant.

We also have three businesses which operate under long-term, fixed-price contracts, representing approximately 34 percent of our total revenue in the current year. This includes one business which changed revenue recognition practices due to the adoption of the new guidance, moving from recognizing revenue at shipment to an over-time method of revenue recognition. The contracts for these businesses have a single, bundled performance obligation, as these businesses generally provide interrelated products and services and integrate these products and services into a combined output specified by the customer. The customer obtains control of this combined output, generally integrated window systems or installed window and curtainwall systems, over time. We measure progress on these contracts following an input method, by comparing total costs incurred to-date to the total estimated costs for the contract, and record that proportion of the total contract price as revenue in the period. Contract costs include materials, labor and other direct costs related to contract performance. We believe this method of recognizing revenue is consistent with our progress in satisfying our contract obligations.

Due to the nature of the work required under these long-term contracts, the estimation of total revenue and costs incurred throughout a project is subject to many variables and requires significant judgment. It is common for these contracts to contacts to contain potential bonuses or penalties which are generally awarded or charged upon certain project milestones or cost or timing targets, and can be based on customer discretion. We estimate variable consideration at the most likely amount to which we expect to be entitled. We include estimated amounts in the transaction price to the extent that it is probable that a significant reversal of cumulative revenue recognized will not occur when the uncertainty associated with the variable consideration is resolved. Our estimates of variable consideration and determination of whether to include estimated amounts in the transaction price are based largely on our assessments of anticipated performance and all information (historical, current and forecasted) that is reasonably available to us.

Long-term contracts are often modified to account for changes in contract specifications and requirements of work to be performed. We consider contract modifications to exist when the modification, generally through a change order, either creates new or changes existing enforceable rights and obligations, and we evaluate these types of modifications to determine whether they may be considered distinct performance obligations. In many cases, these contract modifications are for goods or services that are not distinct from the existing contract, due to the significant integration service provided in the context of the contract. Therefore, these modifications are accounted for as part of the existing contract. The effect of a contract modification on the transaction price and our measure of progress is recognized as an adjustment to revenue, generally on a cumulative catch-up basis.

Typically, under these fixed-price contracts, we bill our customers following an agreed-upon schedule based on work performed. Because the progress billings do not generally correspond to our measurement of revenue on a contract, we generate contract assets when we have recognized revenue in excess of the amount billed to the customer. We generate contract liabilities when we have billed the customer in excess of revenue recognized on a contract.

Finally, we have one business, making up approximately 22 percent of our total revenue in the current year, that recognizes revenue following an over-time output method based upon units produced. The customer is considered to have control over the products at the time of production, as the products are highly customized with no alternative use, and we have an enforceable right to payment for performance completed over the production period. We believe this over-time output method of recognizing revenue reasonably depicts the fulfillment of our performance obligations under our contracts. Previously, this business recognized revenue at the time of shipment. Billings still occur upon shipment. Therefore, contract assets are generated for the unbilled amounts on contracts when production is complete. Variable consideration associated with these orders, generally related to early pay discounts, is not considered significant.

As outlined within the new accounting guidance, we elected several practical expedients in our transition to ASC 606:

- We have made an accounting policy election to account for shipping and handling activities that occur after control of the related goods transfers to
  the customer as fulfillment activities, instead of assessing such activities as performance obligations.
- We have made an accounting policy election to exclude from the transaction price all sales taxes related to revenue-producing transactions that are collected from the customer for a government authority.
- We generally expense incremental costs of obtaining a contract when incurred because the amortization period would be less than one year. These
  costs primarily relate to sales commissions and are included in selling, general and administrative expenses.
- We have not adjusted contract price for a significant financing component, as we expect the period between when our goods and services are transferred to the customer and when the customer pays for those goods and services to be less than a year.

Revenue excludes sales taxes as the Company considers itself a pass-through conduit for collecting and remitting sales taxes.

#### Shipping and handling

Amounts billed to a customer in a sales transaction related to shipping and handling are reported as revenue. Costs incurred by the Company for shipping and handling are reported as cost of sales.

#### Research and development

Research and development costs are expensed as incurred and were \$19.5 million, \$14.0 million and \$8.6 million for fiscal 2019, 2018 and 2017, respectively. Of these amounts, \$6.5 million, \$1.5 million and \$2.2 million, respectively, were focused primarily upon design of custom window and curtainwall systems in accordance with customer specifications and are included in cost of sales. The remainder of the expense is included within selling, general and administrative expenses.

#### Advertising

Advertising costs are expensed as incurred within selling, general and administrative expenses, and were \$1.5 million in fiscal 2019, \$1.4 million in fiscal 2018 and \$1.1 million in fiscal 2017.

#### Income taxes

The Company recognizes deferred tax assets and liabilities based upon the future tax consequences of temporary differences between financial statement carrying amounts of assets and liabilities and their respective tax bases. See Note 13 for additional information regarding income taxes.

#### Subsequent events

We have evaluated subsequent events for potential recognition and disclosure through the date of this filing. Subsequent to the end of the year, we purchased 437,671 shares of stock under our authorized share repurchase program, at a total cost of \$16.2 million.

#### Adoption of new accounting standards

We adopted the new guidance in ASC 606, Revenue from Contracts with Customers, using the modified retrospective transition method applied to those contracts which were not complete as of March 4, 2018, the beginning of our fiscal year 2019. Prior period amounts were not adjusted and therefore continue to be reported in accordance with the accounting guidance and our accounting policies in effect for those periods.

Representing the cumulative effect of adopting ASC 606, we recorded a \$3.0 million increase to the opening balance of retained earnings as of March 4, 2018. For the three- and twelve-month periods ending March 2, 2019, the application of the new accounting guidance had the following impact on our consolidated financial statements:

|  |    | Three Months En | ded Mai | rch 2, 2019                | Twelve Months Ended March 2, 2019 |             |                               |           |  |  |
|--|----|-----------------|---------|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------|-------------------------------|-----------|--|--|
| In thousands                                 |    | As reported     | With    | out adoption of<br>ASC 606 |                                   | As reported | Without adoption o<br>ASC 606 |           |  |  |
| Net sales                                    | \$ | 346,255         | \$      | 339,673                    | \$                                | 1,402,637   | \$                            | 1,382,274 |  |  |
| Cost of sales                                |    | 301,976         |         | 297,945                    |                                   | 1,109,072   |                               | 1,094,747 |  |  |
| Gross profit                                 |    | 44,279          |         | 41,728                     |                                   | 293,565     |                               | 287,527   |  |  |
| Selling, general and administrative expenses |    | 59,057          |         | 58,726                     |                                   | 226,281     |                               | 225,286   |  |  |
| Operating income (loss)                      | \$ | (14,778)        | \$      | (16,998)                   | \$                                | 67,284      | \$                            | 62,241    |  |  |
|  |    |                 |         |                            |                                   |             |                               |           |  |  |
| Income tax expense (benefit)                 | \$ | (5,062)         | \$      | (5,713)                    | \$                                | 12,968      | \$                            | 11,850    |  |  |
| Net earnings (loss)                          |    | (12,083)        |         | (13,653)                   |                                   | 45,694      |                               | 41,769    |  |  |

|   | Ma          | March 2, 2019 |                               |  |
|---|-------------|---------------|-------------------------------|--|
|   | As reported | W             | ithout adoption of<br>ASC 606 |  |
| Inventories   | \$ 78,34    | 4 \$          | 89,676                        |  |
| Costs and earnings on contracts in excess of billings | 55,09       | 5             | 19,515                        |  |
| Billings on contracts in excess of costs and earnings | 21,47       | 8             | 21,022                        |  |
| Other current liabilities                             | 83,15       | 9             | 81,467                        |  |
| Retained earnings                                     | 367,59      | 7             | 363,672                       |  |
|   |             |               |                               |  |

These changes are primarily a result of the transition of certain of our businesses from recognizing revenue at the time of shipment to over-time methods of revenue recognition.

In the first quarter of fiscal 2019, we also adopted ASU 2016-15, Statement of Cash Flows, and ASU 2016-18, Restricted Cash. Both standards provide guidance for presentation of certain topics within the statement of cash flows, including presenting restricted cash within cash and cash equivalents, and they have been applied retrospectively for comparability across all periods. The adoption of these standards did not have a significant impact on our consolidated statements of cash flows.

In the first quarter of fiscal 2019, we elected to early adopt ASU 2018-02, Reclassification of Certain Tax Effects from Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income. This standard permits a company to reclassify the disproportionate income tax effects of the 2017 Tax Cuts and Jobs Act on items within accumulated other comprehensive income ("AOCI") to retained earnings. The FASB refers to these amounts as "stranded tax effects." As a result of this adoption, we reclassified income tax effects of \$0.7 million resulting from tax reform from AOCI to retained earnings following a portfolio approach. These stranded tax effects are derived from the deferred tax balances on our pension obligations as a result of the lower U.S. federal corporate tax rate.

In January 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-01, Financial Instruments—Overall: Recognition and Measurement of Financial Assets and Financial Liabilities. Among other areas, the new guidance changes the current accounting related to the classification and measurement of certain equity investments and changes certain disclosures associated with the fair value of financial instruments. Most notably, ASU 2016-01 requires that equity investments be measured at fair value with changes in fair value recognized in net income as opposed to other comprehensive income. For equity investments considered to be without a readily determinable fair value (and which do not qualify for the net asset value practical expedient), entities will be permitted to elect a measurement alternative and measure the investment at cost less impairment plus or minus observable price changes (in orderly transactions). We adopted ASU 2016-01 in our fiscal year 2019, which did not have a material impact on the Company's consolidated financial position, results of operations, equity or cash flows as we have historically held limited amounts of equity investments, and we have not elected the fair value option with respect to material financial liabilities.

In March 2017, the FASB issued ASU 2017-07, Improving the Presentation of Net Periodic Pension Cost and Net Periodic Postretirement Benefit Cost. This ASU changes how employers that sponsor defined benefit pension and/or other postretirement benefit plans present the net periodic benefit cost in the income statement. Under the new standard, only the service cost component of net periodic benefit cost would be included in operating expenses while all other net periodic benefit costs components would be reported outside of operating income. We adopted this standard in fiscal 2019 and as a result, costs of \$0.5\$ million were included within other expense in our consolidated results of operations. The components of our net periodic defined benefit pension costs are presented in Note 9.

#### Accounting standards not yet adopted

In February 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-02, Leases, which provides for comprehensive changes to lease accounting. The standard requires that a lessee recognize a lease obligation liability and a right-to-use asset for virtually all leases of property, plant and equipment, subsequently amortized over the lease term

We adopted this standard in the first quarter of fiscal 2020, following the modified retrospective application approach. We are substantially complete with our implementation efforts, which have included identification and analysis of our lease portfolio, analysis and evaluation of the new reporting and disclosure requirements of the new guidance, and an evaluation of our lease-related processes and internal controls. The adoption of this standard will result in reflecting a right-of-use asset and lease liability on our consolidated balance sheet in the first quarter of fiscal 2020 of approximately \$50 million. In adopting the new standard, we elected the package of practical expedients, as well as the practical expedient not to separate nonlease components from lease components. We do not expect this standard to have a significant impact on our consolidated results of operations, consolidated statements of cash flows, our liquidity, or on our debt covenant compliance under our current agreements. We have identified new and updated existing internal controls and process to support measurement, recognition and disclosure under this new standard, but such changes were not deemed to be material to our overall system of internal controls.

In June 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-13, Measurement of Credit Losses on Financial Instruments, which revises guidance for the accounting for credit losses on financial instruments within its scope. The new standard introduces an approach, based on expected losses, to estimate credit losses on certain types of financial instruments and modifies the impairment model for available-for-sale debt securities. This ASU is effective for our fiscal year 2021. Entities are required to apply the standard's provisions as a cumulative-effect adjustment to retained earnings as of the beginning of the first reporting period in which the guidance is adopted. We are currently assessing this ASU's impact on our consolidated financial statements.

## 2. Acquisitions

On June 12, 2017, we acquired 100 percent of the stock of EFCO Corporation, a privately-held U.S. manufacturer of architectural aluminum window, curtainwall, storefront and entrance systems for commercial construction projects, for approximately \$190 million. Purchase accounting related to this acquisition was completed during the first quarter of fiscal 2019, with final purchase price allocation as follows:

| (In thousands)                            |               |
|---|---------------|
| Net working capital                       | \$<br>1,422   |
| Property, plant and equipment             | 44,641        |
| Goodwill                                  | 90,429        |
| Other intangible assets                   | 71,500        |
| Less: Long-term liabilities acquired, net | 17,643        |
| Net assets acquired                       | \$<br>190,349 |

Other intangible assets reflect the following:

| (In thousands)         | Estim | ated fair value | Estimated useful life (in years) |
|------------------------|-------|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| Customer relationships | \$    | 34,800          | 16                               |
| Tradename              |       | 32,400          | Indefinite                       |
| Backlog                |       | 4,300           | 1.5                              |
|                        | \$    | 71,500          | -                                |

Sotawall
On December 14, 2016, we acquired substantially all the assets of Sotawall, Inc. ("Sotawall"), for approximately \$138 million. Purchase accounting related to this acquisition was completed during the first quarter of fiscal 2018, with final purchase price allocation as follows:

| (In thousands)                |               |
|-------------------------------|---------------|
| Net working capital           | \$<br>10,682  |
| Property, plant and equipment | 7,993         |
| Goodwill                      | 21,380        |
| Other intangible assets       | <br>94,630    |
| Net assets acquired           | \$<br>134,685 |

The following table provides certain unaudited pro forma consolidated information for the combined company for the fourth quarters and fiscal years 2018 and 2017, as if the EFCO and Sotawall acquisitions were consummated pursuant to each of their respective same terms at the beginning of the fiscal year preceding their respective acquisition dates.

|                                       |   | Three Month | Twelve Months Ended         |    |               |                  |           |
|---------------------------------------|---|-------------|-----------------------------|----|---------------|------------------|-----------|
| (In thousands, except per share data) | March 3, 2018 March 4, 2017 March 3, 2018 |             | March 3, 2018 March 4, 2017 |    | March 3, 2018 | 3, 2018 March 4, |           |
| Net sales                             | \$  | 353,453 \$  | 390,669                     | \$ | 1,398,733     | \$               | 1,474,021 |
| Net earnings                          |   | 23,157      | 26,624                      |    | 81,653        |                  | 98,795    |
| Earnings per share                    |   |             |                             |    |               |                  |           |
| Basic                                 |   | 0.82        | 0.93                        |    | 2.86          |                  | 3.44      |
| Diluted                               |   | 0.81        | 0.92                        |    | 2.83          |                  | 3.43      |

Unaudited pro forma information has been provided for comparative purposes only and the information does not necessarily reflect what the combined results of operations actually would have been had the acquisitions occurred at the beginning of fiscal year 2017. The information does not reflect the effect of any synergies or integration costs that we expect to result from the acquisitions.

### 3. Revenue, Receivables and Contract Assets and Liabilities

### Revenue

The following table disaggregates total revenue by timing of recognition (see Note 15 for disclosure of revenue by segment):

|                        | Three ! | Months Ended | Twel          | ve Months Ended |  |
|------------------------|---------|--------------|---------------|-----------------|--|
| (In thousands)         | Mar     | rch 2, 2019  | March 2, 2019 |                 |  |
| Recognized at shipment | \$      | 141,793      | \$            | 623,357         |  |
| Recognized over time   |         | 204,462      |               | 779,280         |  |
| Total                  | \$      | 346,255      | \$            | 1,402,637       |  |

### Receivables

Trade and construction accounts receivable consist of amounts billed and due from customers. The amounts due are stated at their estimated net realizable value. We maintain an allowance for doubtful accounts to provide for the estimated amount of receivables that will not be collected. This allowance is based on an assessment of customer creditworthiness, historical payment experience and the age of outstanding receivables. Retainage on construction contracts represents amounts withheld by our customers on long-term projects until the project reaches a level of completion at which amounts are released.

| (In thousands)                        | 2019          | 2018 |         |  |
|---------------------------------------|---------------|------|---------|--|
| Trade accounts                        | \$<br>145,693 | \$   | 157,562 |  |
| Construction contracts                | 19,050        |      | 26,545  |  |
| Contract retainage                    | 32,396        |      | 26,388  |  |
| Other receivables                     | _             |      | 2,887   |  |
| Total receivables                     | <br>197,139   |      | 213,382 |  |
| Less: allowance for doubtful accounts | (4,372)       |      | (1,530) |  |
| Net receivables                       | \$<br>192,767 | \$   | 211,852 |  |

### Contract assets and liabilities

Contract assets consist of retainage, costs and earnings in excess of billings and other unbilled amounts typically generated when revenue recognized exceeds the amount billed to the customer. Contract liabilities consist of billings in excess of costs and earnings and other deferred revenue on contracts. Retainage is classified within receivables and deferred revenue is classified within other current liabilities on our consolidated balance sheets.

The time period between when performance obligations are complete and when payment is due is not significant. In certain of our businesses that recognize revenue over time, progress billings follow an agreed-upon schedule of values, and retainage is withheld by the customer until the project reaches a level of completion where amounts are released.

| (In thousands)       |  |    | ch 2, 2019 | March 3, 2018 |        |  |  |
|----------------------|--|----|------------|---------------|--------|--|--|
| Contract assets      |  | \$ | 87,491     | \$            | 30,508 |  |  |
| Contract liabilities |  |    | 24,083     |               | 20,120 |  |  |

The increase in contract assets was primarily due to additional businesses recognizing revenue in advance of billings, as a result of changing accounting policies for revenue recognition upon adoption of ASC 606 and the timing of costs incurred in advance of billing on a large project. The increase in contract liabilities was due to timing of project activity within our businesses that operate under long-term contracts.

During fiscal 2019, we recognized revenue of \$10.4 million related to contract liabilities at March 4, 2018, and revenue of \$5.9 million related to performance obligations satisfied in previous periods due to changes in contract estimates. For the fourth quarter of fiscal 2019, we did not recognize any revenue related to contract liabilities at March 4, 2018, and recognized revenue of \$2.1 million related to performance obligations satisfied in previous periods due to changes in contract estimates.

Some of our contracts have an expected duration of longer than a year, with performance obligations extending over that timeframe. Generally these contracts are in our businesses with long-term contracts which recognize revenue over time. As of March 2, 2019, the transaction price associated with unsatisfied performance obligations was approximately \$734.1 million. The performance obligations are expected to be satisfied, and the corresponding revenue to be recognized, over the following estimated time periods:

| (In thousands)   |    | rch 2, 2019 |
|------------------|----|-------------|
| Within one year  | \$ | 376,027     |
| Within two years |    | 264,390     |
| Beyond           |    | 93,660      |
| Total            | \$ | 734,077     |

# 4. Supplemental Balance Sheet Information

### Inventories

| (In thousands)    |   | 2019 |        | 2018         |
|-------------------|---|------|--------|--------------|
| Raw materials     | _ | \$   | 43,890 | \$<br>35,049 |
| Work-in-process   |   |      | 15,533 | 17,406       |
| Finished goods    |   |      | 18,921 | 28,453       |
| Total inventories |   | \$   | 78,344 | \$<br>80,908 |

## Other current liabilities

| (In thousands)                  | 2019         |    | 2018   |
|---------------------------------|--------------|----|--------|
| Warranties                      | \$<br>12,475 | \$ | 18,110 |
| Accrued project losses          | 37,085       |    | 26,422 |
| Taxes                           | 8,026        |    | 5,342  |
| Other                           | 25,573       |    | 29,822 |
| Total other current liabilities | \$<br>83,159 | \$ | 79,696 |

## Other non-current liabilities

| (In thousands)  | 2019         |    | 2018   |
|---|--------------|----|--------|
| Deferred benefit from New Markets Tax Credit transactions | \$<br>26,458 | \$ | 16,708 |
| Retirement plan obligations                               | 7,633        |    | 8,997  |
| Deferred compensation plan                                | 10,408       |    | 10,730 |
| Other   | 32,683       |    | 34,211 |
| Total other non-current liabilities                       | \$<br>77,182 | \$ | 70,646 |

## 5. Financial Instruments

### Marketable Securities

We hold the following available-for-sale marketable securities, made up of municipal and corporate bonds:

| (In thousands) | Ame | ortized Cost | Gross | Unrealized Gains | Gro | ss Unrealized Losses | <br>stimated Fair<br>Value |
|----------------|-----|--------------|-------|------------------|-----|----------------------|----------------------------|
| March 2, 2019  | \$  | 12,481       | \$    | 59               | \$  | (108)                | \$<br>12,432               |
| March 3, 2018  |     | 9,183        |       | 8                |     | (138)                | 9,053                      |

We have a wholly-owned insurance subsidiary, Prism Assurance, Ltd. (Prism), which holds these bonds. Prism insures a portion of our general liability, workers' compensation and automobile liability risks using reinsurance agreements to meet statutory requirements. The reinsurance carrier requires Prism to maintain fixed-maturity investments, which are generally high-quality municipal and corporate bonds, for the purpose of providing collateral for Prism's obligations under the reinsurance agreements.

The amortized cost and estimated fair values of our municipal and corporate bonds at March 2, 2019, by contractual maturity, are shown below. Expected maturities may differ from contractual maturities, as borrowers may have the right to call or prepay obligations with or without penalty. Gross realized gains and losses were insignificant for all periods presented.

| (In thousands)                        | 1  | Amortized Cost | Estimated Market Value |
|---------------------------------------|----|----------------|------------------------|
| Due within one year                   | \$ | 405            | \$<br>402              |
| Due after one year through five years |    | 9,479          | 9,439                  |
| Due after five years through 10 years |    | 1,834          | 1,834                  |
| Due after 10 years through 15 years   |    | _              | _                      |
| Due beyond 15 years                   |    | 763            | 757                    |
| Total                                 | \$ | 12,481         | \$<br>12,432           |

## Fair value measurements

Financial assets and liabilities are classified in the fair value hierarchy based on the lowest level input that is significant to the fair value measurement: Level 1 (unadjusted quoted prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities); Level 2 (observable market inputs, other than quoted prices included in Level 1); and Level 3 (unobservable inputs that cannot be corroborated by observable market data). We do not have any Level 3 assets or liabilities.

Financial assets and liabilities measured at fair value on a recurring basis were:

| (In thousands)                |    | Quoted Prices in<br>Active Markets<br>(Level 1) | Inputs | Other Observable<br>Inputs<br>(Level 2) |    | Total Fair<br>Value |
|-------------------------------|----|---|--------|---|----|---------------------|
| March 2, 2019                 |    |   |        |   |    |                     |
| Cash equivalents              |    |   |        |   |    |                     |
| Money market funds            | \$ | 2,015   | \$     | _                                       | \$ | 2,015               |
| Commercial paper              |    | _   |        | 300                                     |    | 300                 |
| Total cash equivalents        | _  | 2,015   |        | 300                                     |    | 2,315               |
| Short-term securities         |    |   |        |   |    |                     |
| Municipal and corporate bonds |    | _   |        | 402                                     |    | 402                 |
| Long-term securities          |    |   |        |   |    |                     |
| Municipal and corporate bonds |    | _   | 1      | 2,030                                   |    | 12,030              |
| Total assets at fair value    | \$ | 2,015   | \$ 1   | 2,732                                   | \$ | 14,747              |
| March 3, 2018                 | _  |   |        |   |    |                     |
| Cash equivalents              |    |   |        |   |    |                     |
| Money market funds            | \$ | 2,901   | \$     | _                                       | \$ | 2,901               |
| Commercial paper              |    | _   |        | 400                                     |    | 400                 |
| Total cash equivalents        | _  | 2,901   |        | 400                                     |    | 3,301               |
| Short-term securities         |    |   |        |   |    |                     |
| Municipal and corporate bonds |    | _   |        | 423                                     |    | 423                 |
| Long-term securities          |    |   |        |   |    |                     |
| Municipal and corporate bonds |    | _   |        | 8,630                                   |    | 8,630               |
| Total assets at fair value    | \$ | 2,901   | \$     | 9,453                                   | \$ | 12,354              |

# Cash equivalents

Fair value of money market funds was determined based on quoted prices for identical assets in active markets. Commercial paper was measured at fair value using inputs based on quoted prices for similar securities in active markets.

# Short- and long-term securities

Municipal bonds were measured at fair value based on market prices from recent trades of similar securities and are classified as short-term or long-term based on maturity date. Mutual funds were measured at fair value based on quoted prices for identical assets in active markets.

# Foreign currency instruments

We periodically enter into forward purchase foreign currency contracts, generally with an original maturity date of less than one year, to hedge foreign currency exchange rate risk. At March 2, 2019, we held foreign exchange forward contracts with a U.S. dollar notional value of \$17.5 million, with the objective of reducing the exposure to fluctuations in the Canadian dollar and the

Euro. The fair value of these contracts at year-end was a net liability of \$0.5 million. These forward contracts are measured at fair value using unobservable market inputs, such as quotations on forward foreign exchange points and foreign currency exchange rates, and would be classified as Level 2 within the fair

Nonrecurring fair value measurements

Certain assets are measured at fair value on a nonrecurring basis and are subject to fair value adjustments in certain circumstances. These include certain long-lived assets that are written down to estimated fair value when they are determined to be impaired, utilizing a valuation approach incorporating Level 3 inputs. See Note 7 for information regarding this impairment.

# 6. Property, Plant and Equipment

| (In thousands)                      | 2019          |    | 2018      |
|-------------------------------------|---------------|----|-----------|
| Land                                | \$<br>7,101   | \$ | 7,251     |
| Buildings and improvements          | 196,057       |    | 172,468   |
| Machinery and equipment             | 375,700       |    | 380,952   |
| Office equipment and furniture      | 56,366        |    | 56,752    |
| Construction in progress            | <br>40,846    |    | 44,095    |
| Total property, plant and equipment | 676,070       |    | 661,518   |
| Less accumulated depreciation       | (360,247)     |    | (357,455) |
| Net property, plant and equipment   | \$<br>315,823 | \$ | 304,063   |

Depreciation expense was \$37.1 million in each of fiscal 2019 and 2018 and \$31.6 million in 2017. The land and building associated with the closure of our St. George, UT Architectural Glass segment manufacturing facility was carried at estimated fair value and classified as available-for-sale at the end of fiscal 2018. This property was sold in fiscal 2019 for \$11.4 million.

## 7. Goodwill and Other Intangible Assets

The carrying amount of goodwill attributable to each reporting segment was:

| (In thousands)                               | Architectural<br>Framing Systems |         | Architectural Glass |        | Architectural<br>Services |    | Large-Scale<br>Optical |    | Total   |
|--|----------------------------------|---------|---------------------|--------|---------------------------|----|------------------------|----|---------|
| Balance at March 4, 2017                     | \$                               | 63,701  | \$                  | 25,956 | \$<br>1,120               | \$ | 10,557                 | \$ | 101,334 |
| Goodwill acquired                            |                                  | 84,162  |                     | _      | _                         |    | _                      |    | 84,162  |
| Goodwill adjustments for purchase accounting |                                  | (5,859) |                     | _      | _                         |    | _                      |    | (5,859) |
| Foreign currency translation                 |                                  | 1,304   |                     | 15     | _                         |    | _                      |    | 1,319   |
| Balance at March 3, 2018                     |                                  | 143,308 |                     | 25,971 | 1,120                     |    | 10,557                 |    | 180,956 |
| Goodwill adjustments for purchase accounting |                                  | 6,267   |                     | _      | _                         |    | _                      |    | 6,267   |
| Foreign currency translation                 |                                  | (1,129) |                     | (262)  | _                         |    | _                      |    | (1,391) |
| Balance at March 2, 2019                     | \$                               | 148,446 | \$                  | 25,709 | \$<br>1,120               | \$ | 10,557                 | \$ | 185,832 |

No goodwill impairment has been recorded in any period presented.

The gross carrying amount of other intangible assets and related accumulated amortization was:

| (In thousands)                         | Gross Carrying<br>Amount |         |    |          | Accumulated<br>Amortization |         | Impairment |         | Impairment    |  | Foreign<br>Currency<br>Translation |  | Net |
|--|--------------------------|---------|----|----------|-----------------------------|---------|------------|---------|---------------|--|------------------------------------|--|-----|
| March 2, 2019                          |                          |         |    |          |                             |         |            |         |               |  |                                    |  |     |
| Definite-lived intangible assets:      |                          |         |    |          |                             |         |            |         |               |  |                                    |  |     |
| Customer relationships                 | \$                       | 122,816 | \$ | (26,637) | \$                          | _       | \$         | (2,578) | \$<br>93,601  |  |                                    |  |     |
| Other intangibles                      |                          | 41,697  |    | (31,634) |                             | _       |            | (850)   | 9,213         |  |                                    |  |     |
| Total definite-lived intangible assets |                          | 164,513 |    | (58,271) |                             |         |            | (3,428) | 102,814       |  |                                    |  |     |
| Indefinite-lived intangible assets:    |                          |         |    |          |                             |         |            |         |               |  |                                    |  |     |
| Trademarks                             |                          | 49,078  |    | _        |                             | (3,141) |            | (516)   | 45,421        |  |                                    |  |     |
| Total intangible assets                | \$                       | 213,591 | \$ | (58,271) | \$                          | (3,141) | \$         | (3,944) | \$<br>148,235 |  |                                    |  |     |
| March 3, 2018                          |                          |         |    |          |                             |         |            |         |               |  |                                    |  |     |
| Definite-lived intangible assets:      |                          |         |    |          |                             |         |            |         |               |  |                                    |  |     |
| Customer relationships                 | \$                       | 122,816 | \$ | (20,277) | \$                          | _       | \$         | (56)    | \$<br>102,483 |  |                                    |  |     |
| Other intangibles                      |                          | 41,697  |    | (25,879) |                             | _       |            | (30)    | 15,788        |  |                                    |  |     |
| Total definite-lived intangible assets |                          | 164,513 |    | (46,156) |                             |         |            | (86)    | 118,271       |  |                                    |  |     |
| Indefinite-lived intangible assets:    |                          |         |    |          |                             |         |            |         |               |  |                                    |  |     |
| Trademarks                             |                          | 48,461  |    | _        |                             | _       |            | 617     | 49,078        |  |                                    |  |     |
| Total intangible assets                | \$                       | 212,974 | \$ | (46,156) | \$                          | _       | \$         | 531     | \$<br>167,349 |  |                                    |  |     |

In fiscal 2019, we tested indefinite-lived intangible assets for impairment and determined that the fair value of one of our tradenames, with a carrying value of \$32.4 million, was below its carrying amount by \$3.1 million and therefore we recorded this impairment charge within selling, general and administrative expenses. We continue to conclude that the useful life of our indefinite-lived intangible assets is appropriate.

Amortization expense on definite-lived intangible assets was \$12.7 million, \$17.8 million and \$4.0 million in fiscal 2019, 2018 and 2017, respectively. Amortization expense is included within selling, general and administrative expenses for all intangible assets other than that of debt issuance costs, which is included in interest expense. Estimated future amortization expense for definite-lived intangible assets is:

| (In thousands)                 | 2020     | 2021        | 2022        | 2023        | 2024        |
|--------------------------------|----------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| Estimated amortization expense | \$ 8,059 | \$<br>8,053 | \$<br>7,896 | \$<br>7,508 | \$<br>7,476 |

### 8.Debt

We maintain a committed revolving credit facility with maximum borrowings of up to \$335.0 million, maturing in November 2021. Outstanding borrowings under our committed revolving credit facility were \$225.0 million, as of March 2, 2019 and \$195.0 million outstanding as of March 3, 2018. Under this facility, we are subject to two financial covenants that require us to stay below a maximum debt-to-EBITDA ratio and maintain a minimum ratio of interest expense-to-EBITDA. Both ratios are computed quarterly, with EBITDA calculated on a rolling four-quarter basis. If the Company is not in compliance with either of these covenants, our credit facility may be terminated and/or any amounts then outstanding may be declared immediately due and payable. At March 2, 2019, we were in compliance with both financial covenants. We have the ability to issue letters of credit of up to \$70.0 million under this credit facility, the outstanding amounts of which decrease the available commitment. At March 2, 2019, \$84.9 million was available under this credit facility.

Debt at March 2, 2019 also included \$20.4 million of industrial revenue bonds that mature in fiscal years 2021 through 2043 and \$0.4 million of long-term debt in Canada that matures in August 2022. The fair value of the industrial revenue bonds approximated carrying value at March 2, 2019, due to the variable interest rates on these instruments. The bonds would be classified as Level 2 within the fair value hierarchy described in Note 5.

We also maintain two Canadian demand revolving credit facilities totaling \$12.0 million Canadian dollars. No borrowings were outstanding under the facilities as of March 2, 2019 or March 3, 2018. Borrowings under the facilities are made available at the sole discretion of the lender and are payable on demand, with interest at rates specified in the credit agreements for the demand facilities.

Debt maturities and other selected information follows:

| (In thousands)                | 2020                   | 2021    | 2022      | 2023    |    | 2024 Thereafter |    | 2024     |    | 2024    |  | 2024 |  | 2024 |  | Thereafter |  | Thereafter |  | Total |
|-------------------------------|------------------------|---------|-----------|---------|----|-----------------|----|----------|----|---------|--|------|--|------|--|------------|--|------------|--|-------|
| Maturities                    | \$121                  | \$5,521 | \$227,121 | \$1,082 |    | \$—             |    | \$12,000 | \$ | 245,845 |  |      |  |      |  |            |  |            |  |       |
| (In thousands, except percent | ages)                  |         |           |         |    |                 |    | 2019     |    | 2018    |  |      |  |      |  |            |  |            |  |       |
| Average daily borrowing       | s during the year      |         |           |         |    |                 | \$ | 207,358  | \$ | 195,400 |  |      |  |      |  |            |  |            |  |       |
| Maximum borrowings ou         | tstanding during the   | year    |           |         |    |                 |    | 249,000  |    | 276,100 |  |      |  |      |  |            |  |            |  |       |
| Weighted average interes      | st rate during the yea | r       |           |         |    |                 |    | 3.61%    |    | 2.61%   |  |      |  |      |  |            |  |            |  |       |
| (In thousands)                |                        |         |           |         |    | 2019            |    | 2018     |    | 2017    |  |      |  |      |  |            |  |            |  |       |
| Interest on debt              |                        |         |           |         | \$ | 8,114           | \$ | 5,208    | \$ | 971     |  |      |  |      |  |            |  |            |  |       |
| Other interest expense        |                        |         |           |         |    | 335             |    | 300      |    | _       |  |      |  |      |  |            |  |            |  |       |
| Interest expense              |                        |         |           |         | \$ | 8,449           | \$ | 5,508    | \$ | 971     |  |      |  |      |  |            |  |            |  |       |
|                               |                        |         |           |         |    |                 |    |          |    |         |  |      |  |      |  |            |  |            |  |       |

Interest payments were \$8.1 million in fiscal 2019, \$5.3 million in fiscal 2018 and \$0.8 million in fiscal 2017.

### 9. Employee Benefit Plans

## 401(k) Retirement Plan

The Company sponsors a single 401(k) retirement plan covering substantially all full-time, non-union employees, as well as union employees at two of its manufacturing facilities. Under the plan, employees are allowed to contribute up to 60 percent of eligible earnings to the plan, up to statutory limits. The Company contributes a match of 100 percent of the first one percent contributed and 50 percent of the next five percent contributed on eligible compensation that non-union employees contribute and according to contract terms for union employees. The Company match was \$8.0 million in fiscal 2019, \$7.5 million in fiscal 2018 and \$6.2 million in fiscal 2017.

# Deferred Compensation Plan

The Company maintains a plan that allows participants to defer compensation. The deferred compensation liability was \$12.1 million and \$10.7 million at March 2, 2019 and March 3, 2018, respectively. The Company has investments in corporate-owned life insurance policies (COLI) of \$13.2 million and money market funds (classified as cash equivalents) of \$0.6 million with the intention of utilizing them as long-term funding sources for this plan. The COLI assets are recorded at their net cash surrender values and are included in other non-current assets in the consolidated balance sheet.

### Plans under Collective Bargaining Agreements

We contribute to various multi-employer union retirement plans, which provide retirement benefits to the majority of our union employees; none of the plans are considered significant. The total contribution to these plans in fiscal 2019, 2018 and 2017 was \$4.9 million, \$2.9 million and \$3.9 million, respectively.

### Pension Plan

The Company sponsors the Tubelite Inc. Hourly Employees' Pension Plan, a defined-benefit pension plan that was frozen to new entrants in fiscal 2004, with no additional benefits accruing to plan participants after such time.

## Officers' Supplemental Executive Retirement Plan (SERP)

The Company sponsors an unfunded SERP, a defined-benefit pension plan that was frozen to new entrants in fiscal 2009, with no additional benefits accruing to plan participants after such time.

# Obligations and Funded Status of Defined-Benefit Pension Plans

The following tables present reconciliations of the benefit obligation of the defined-benefit pension plans and the funded status of the defined-benefit pension plans. The Tubelite plan uses a measurement date as of the calendar month-end closest to our fiscal year-end, while the SERP uses a measurement date aligned with our fiscal year-end.

| (In thousands)                                | 2019 |         | 2018          |
|---|------|---------|---------------|
| Change in projected benefit obligation        |      |         |               |
| Benefit obligation beginning of period        | \$   | 13,834  | \$<br>14,492  |
| Interest cost                                 |      | 506     | 531           |
| Actuarial (gain)                              |      | (19)    | (175)         |
| Benefits paid                                 |      | (1,011) | (1,014)       |
| Benefit obligation at measurement date        |      | 13,310  | <br>13,834    |
| Change in plan assets                         |      |         |               |
| Fair value of plan assets beginning of period | \$   | 4,169   | \$<br>4,185   |
| Actual return on plan assets                  |      | 97      | 10            |
| Company contributions                         |      | 2,075   | 988           |
| Benefits paid                                 |      | (1,011) | (1,014)       |
| Fair value of plan assets at measurement date |      | 5,330   | 4,169         |
| Underfunded status                            | \$   | (7,980) | \$<br>(9,665) |

The funded status was recognized in the consolidated balance sheets as follows, as one of our plans was in an overfunded position:

| (In thousands)                | 2019          | 2018          |
|-------------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| Other non-current assets      | \$<br>337     | \$<br>_       |
| Current liabilities           | (684)         | (668)         |
| Other non-current liabilities | (7,633)       | (8,997)       |
| Total                         | \$<br>(7,980) | \$<br>(9,665) |

The following was included in accumulated other comprehensive loss and has not yet been recognized as a component of net periodic benefit cost:

| (In thousands)     | 2019        | 2018        |
|--------------------|-------------|-------------|
| Net actuarial loss | \$<br>5,025 | \$<br>5,325 |

The amount recognized in comprehensive earnings, net of tax expense, was:

| (In thousands)     | 20 | 19  | 2018      |
|--------------------|----|-----|-----------|
| Net actuarial gain | \$ | 229 | \$<br>284 |

Components of the defined-benefit pension plans' net periodic benefit cost:

| (In thousands)                        | 2  | 2019 | 2018      | 2017      |
|---------------------------------------|----|------|-----------|-----------|
| Interest cost                         | \$ | 506  | \$<br>531 | \$<br>555 |
| Expected return on assets             |    | (40) | (41)      | (41)      |
| Amortization of unrecognized net loss |    | 226  | 228       | 225       |
| Net periodic benefit cost             | \$ | 692  | \$<br>718 | \$<br>739 |

Total net periodic pension benefit cost is expected to be approximately \$0.5 million in fiscal 2020. The estimated net actuarial loss for the defined-benefit pension plans that will be amortized from accumulated other comprehensive loss into net periodic benefit cost for fiscal 2020 is \$0.1 million, net of tax benefit.

# Additional Information

# Assumptions

| Benefit Obligation Weighted-Average Assumptions | 2019  | 2018  | 2017  |
|---|-------|-------|-------|
| Discount rate                                   | 3.80% | 3.80% | 3.80% |
|   |       |       |       |

| Net Periodic Benefit Expense Weighted-Average Assumptions | 2019  | 2018  | 2017  |  |  |
|---|-------|-------|-------|--|--|
| Discount rate   | 3.85% | 3.80% | 3.85% |  |  |
| Expected long-term rate of return on assets               | 4 50% | 2.00% | 2.00% |  |  |

Discount rate. The discount rate reflects the current rate at which the defined-benefit plans' pension liabilities could be effectively settled at the end of the year based on the measurement date. The discount rate was determined by matching the expected benefit payments to payments from the Principal Discount Yield Curve. There are no known or anticipated changes in the discount rate assumption that will have a significant impact on pension expense in fiscal 2020.

Expected return on assets. To develop the expected long-term rate of return on assets, we considered historical long-term rates of return achieved by the plan investments, the plan's investment strategy, and current and projected market conditions. During fiscal 2019, the assets of the Tubelite plan were moved from investment in a short-term bond fund to various duration fixed income funds. The investments are carried at fair value based on prices from recent trades of similar securities, which would be classified as Level 2 in the valuation hierarchy. We do not maintain assets intended for the future use of the SERP.

### Contributions

Company contributions to the plans for fiscal 2019 were \$2.1 million and for fiscal 2018 were \$1.0 million, which equaled or exceeded the minimum funding requirements.

### **Estimated Future Benefit Payments**

The following benefit payments, which reflect expected future service, are expected to be paid by the plans:

| (In thousands) |                                   | 2020        | 2021        | 2022        | 2023      | 2024      | 20 | 025-2029 |
|----------------|-----------------------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|----|----------|
|                | Estimated future benefit payments | \$<br>1,054 | \$<br>1,035 | \$<br>1,008 | \$<br>977 | \$<br>946 | \$ | 4,405    |

### 10. Commitments and Contingent Liabilities

### Operating lease commitments

As of March 2, 2019, the Company was obligated under non-cancelable operating leases for buildings and equipment. Certain leases provide for increased rental payments based upon increases in real estate taxes or operating costs. Future minimum rental payments under non-cancelable operating leases are:

| (In thousands)         | 2020         |   | 2021   |   | 2022  | 2023        | 2024        | Т  | hereafter | Total        |  |
|------------------------|--------------|---|--------|---|-------|-------------|-------------|----|-----------|--------------|--|
| Total minimum payments | \$<br>14.888 | S | 11,787 | S | 9.669 | \$<br>8.772 | \$<br>6.735 | \$ | 16,806    | \$<br>68.657 |  |

Total rental expense, including operating leases and short-term equipment rentals, was \$25.1 million, \$21.8 million and \$16.9 million in fiscal 2019, 2018 and 2017, respectively. We lease the property that holds Sotawall's principal facilities from a company owned by an officer of Sotawall. Total rent paid for this facility was approximately \$3.2 million in fiscal 2019, and the future minimum lease commitment is \$12.7 million.

At March 2, 2019, we had one sale-leaseback agreement for equipment that provides an option to purchase the equipment at projected future fair market value upon expiration of the lease in 2021. The lease is classified as an operating lease in accordance with applicable financial accounting standards. The Company has a deferred gain of \$0.8 million under the sale and leaseback transaction, which is included in the balance sheet as other current and non-current liabilities. The average annual lease payment over the remaining life of the lease is \$1.0 million.

### **Bond commitments**

In the ordinary course of business, predominantly in the Architectural Services and Architectural Framing Systems segments, we are required to provide surety or performance bonds that commit payments to our customers for any non-performance. At March 2, 2019, 5313.2 million of our backlog was bonded by these types of bonds with a face value of \$570.6 million. These bonds do not have stated expiration dates, as we are released from the bonds upon completion of the contract. We have not been required to make any payments under these bonds with respect to our existing businesses.

## Warranty and project-related contingencies

We reserve estimated exposures on known claims, as well as on a portion of anticipated claims, for product warranty and rework costs based on historical product liability claims as a ratio of sales. Claim costs are deducted from the accrual when paid. Factors

that could have an impact on the warranty accrual in any given period include the following: changes in manufacturing quality, changes in product mix and any significant changes in sales volume. A warranty rollforward follows:

| (In thousands)                 | 2019 |          | 2018 |         |  |
|--------------------------------|------|----------|------|---------|--|
| Balance at beginning of period | \$   | 22,517   | \$   | 21,933  |  |
| Additional accruals            |      | 5,552    |      | 4,643   |  |
| Acquired reserves              |      | _        |      | 5,663   |  |
| Claims paid                    |      | (11,332) |      | (9,722) |  |
| Balance at end of period       | \$   | 16,737   | \$   | 22,517  |  |

Additionally, we are subject to project management and installation-related contingencies as a result of our fixed-price material supply and installation service contracts, primarily in our Architectural Services segment and certain of our Architectural Framing Systems businesses, including those taken on with our acquisition of EFCO. We actively manage the risk of these exposures through contract negotiations, proactive project management and insurance coverages. The liability for these types of project-related contingencies was \$42.1 million and \$26.4 million as of March 2, 2019 and March 3, 2018, respectively.

### Letters of credit

At March 2, 2019, we had \$25.1 million of ongoing letters of credit, all of which have been issued under our revolving credit facility, as discussed in Note 8.

### Purchase obligations

Purchase obligations for raw material commitments and capital expenditures totaled \$132.2 million as of March 2, 2019.

## Environmental liability

In fiscal 2008, we acquired one manufacturing facility which has certain historical environmental conditions. Remediation of these conditions is ongoing without significant disruption to our operations. The liability for these remediation activities was \$1.2 million and \$1.3 million at March 2, 2019 and March 3, 2018, respectively.

### New Markets Tax Credit (NMTC) transactions

We have entered into four separate NMTC programs to support our operational expansion, including two transactions completed in the current fiscal year. Proceeds received from investors on these transactions are included within other non-current liabilities on our consolidated balance sheets. The NMTC arrangements are subject to 100 percent tax credit recapture for a period of seven years from the date of each respective transaction. Therefore, upon the termination of each arrangement, these proceeds will be recognized in earnings in exchange for the transfer of tax credits. The direct and incremental costs incurred in structuring these arrangements have been deferred and are included in other non-current assets on our consolidated balance sheets. These costs will be recognized in conjunction with the recognition of the related proceeds on each arrangement. During the construction phase, we are required to hold cash dedicated to fund each capital project which is classified as restricted cash on our consolidated balance sheets. Variable-interest entities, which have been included within our consolidated financial statements, have been created as a result of the structure of these transactions, as investors in the programs do not have a material interest in their underlying economics.

The table below provides a summary of our outstanding NMTC transactions (in millions):

| Inception date | Termination date | Proceed | ls received | D  | eferred costs | Net benefit |      |  |
|----------------|------------------|---------|-------------|----|---------------|-------------|------|--|
| November 2013  | October 2020     | \$      | 10.7        | \$ | 3.0           | \$          | 7.7  |  |
| June 2016      | May 2023         |         | 6.0         |    | 0.9           |             | 5.1  |  |
| August 2018    | July 2025        |         | 6.6         |    | 0.9           |             | 5.7  |  |
| September 2018 | August 2025      |         | 3.2         |    | 0.8           |             | 2.4  |  |
| Total          |                  | \$      | 26.5        | \$ | 5.6           | \$          | 20.9 |  |

# Litigation

In November 2018, a purported class action lawsuit was filed claiming the Company and certain named executive officers made materially false and/or misleading statements and failed to disclose material adverse facts about the Company's business and operations during the period June 28, 2018 to September 17, 2018. In December 2018, a derivative lawsuit was filed, based on substantially similar allegations, against certain of our executive officers and directors claiming breach of fiduciary duty, waste of corporate assets and unjust enrichment. We intend to vigorously defend against both of these matters. Due to the preliminary nature of these matters, we are unable to estimate any potential loss at this time.

In addition to the foregoing, the Company is a party to various legal proceedings incidental to its normal operating activities. In particular, like others in the construction supply and services industry, the Company's construction supply and services businesses are routinely involved in various disputes and claims arising out of construction projects, sometimes involving significant monetary damages or product replacement. The Company is subject to litigation arising out of general liability, employment practices, workers' compensation and automobile claims. Although it is very difficult to accurately predict the outcome of such proceedings, facts currently available indicate that no such claims will result in losses that would have a material adverse effect on the results of operations, cash flows or financial condition of the Company.

### 11. Shareholders' Equity

A class of 200,000 shares of junior preferred stock with a par value of \$1.00 is authorized, but unissued.

### Share Repurchases

During fiscal 2004, the Board of Directors authorized a share repurchase program, with subsequent increases in authorization, including an increase in authorization by 2,000,000 shares in fiscal 2019. We repurchased 1,257,983 shares under the program during fiscal 2019, for a total cost of \$43.3 million. We repurchased 702,299 shares under the program, for a total cost of \$33.7 million, in fiscal 2018, and 250,001 shares under the program, for a total cost of \$10.8 million, in fiscal 2017. The Company has repurchased a total of 5,267,915 shares, at a total cost of \$149.3 million, since the inception of this program. We have remaining authority to repurchase 1,982,085 shares under this program, which has no expiration date.

In addition to the shares repurchased under this repurchase plan, during fiscal 2019, 2018 and 2017, the Company also withheld \$2.0 million, \$3.0 million and \$2.6 million, respectively, of Company stock from employees in order to satisfy stock-for-stock option exercises or tax obligations related to stock-based compensation, pursuant to terms of board and shareholder-approved compensation plans.

### Accumulated Other Comprehensive Loss

The following summarizes the accumulated other comprehensive loss, net of tax, at March 2, 2019 and March 3, 2018:

| (In thousands)                               | 2019 |          | 2018 |          |  |
|--|------|----------|------|----------|--|
| Net unrealized loss on marketable securities | \$   | (35)     | \$   | (99)     |  |
| Foreign currency hedge                       |      | (409)    |      | 156      |  |
| Pension liability adjustments                |      | (3,852)  |      | (3,344)  |  |
| Foreign currency translation adjustments     |      | (27,831) |      | (20,766) |  |
| Total accumulated other comprehensive loss   | \$   | (32,127) | \$   | (24,053) |  |

## 12. Share-Based Compensation

We have a 2009 Stock Incentive Plan and a 2009 Non-Employee Director Stock Incentive Plan (the Plans) that provide for the issuance of 1,888,000 and 350,000 shares, respectively, for various forms of stock-based compensation to employees and non-employee directors. Awards under these Plans may be in the form of incentive stock options (to employees only), nonstatutory options or stock-settled stock appreciation rights (SARs), all of which are granted with an exercise price equal to the fair market value of the Company's stock at the date of award. We are also authorized to issue nonvested share awards and nonvested share unit awards under the Plans. Issued SARs vest over a three-year period and options issued to non-employee directors vest at the end of six months, both with a 10-year term. Nonvested share awards and nonvested share unit awards generally vest over a two, three or four-year period.

Total stock-based compensation expense under all Plans included in the results of operations was \$6.3 million for fiscal 2019, \$6.2 million for fiscal 2018 and \$6.0 million for 2017. We elect to account for any forfeitures as they occur.

# Stock Options and SARs

There were no stock options or SARs issued in any fiscal year presented. Activity for the current year is summarized as follows:

|  | Number of<br>Shares | Weight<br>Avera<br>Exercise | ge    | Weighted Average<br>Remaining<br>Contractual Life | Ir | Aggregate<br>ntrinsic Value at<br>Year-End |
|--|---------------------|-----------------------------|-------|---|----|--|
| Outstanding at March 3, 2018                 | 129,901             | \$                          | 11.10 |   |    |  |
| Awards exercised                             | (29,560)            | 2                           | 20.43 |   |    |  |
| Outstanding and exercisable at March 2, 2019 | 100,341             | \$                          | 8.34  | 2.5 Years   | \$ | 2,778,442                                  |

Cash proceeds from the exercise of stock options were \$0.2 million, \$0.8 million and \$1.9 million for fiscal 2019, 2018 and 2017, respectively. The aggregate intrinsic value of securities exercised (the amount by which the stock price on the date of exercise exceeded the stock price of the award on the date of grant) was \$0.6 million, \$4.8 million and \$6.0 million in fiscal 2019, 2018 and 2017, respectively.

## Nonvested Share Awards and Units

The following table summarizes nonvested share activity for fiscal 2019:

|               | Number of Shares and<br>Units | ghted Average<br>Date Fair Value |
|---------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| March 3, 2018 | 266,180                       | \$<br>49.22                      |
| Granted       | 163,987                       | 43.00                            |
| Vested        | (124,112)                     | 46.09                            |
| Canceled      | (19,442)                      | 48.93                            |
| March 2, 2019 | 286,613                       | \$<br>47.00                      |

At March 2, 2019, there was \$6.7 million of total unrecognized compensation cost related to nonvested share and nonvested share unit awards, which is expected to be recognized over a weighted average period of approximately 19 months. The total fair value of shares vested during fiscal 2019 was \$5.1 million.

### 13. Income Taxes

Earnings before income taxes consisted of the following:

| (In thousands)               | 2019         | 2018          | 2017          |
|------------------------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| United States                | \$<br>60,042 | \$<br>111,980 | \$<br>123,229 |
| International                | (1,380)      | (2,100)       | (424)         |
| Earnings before income taxes | \$<br>58,662 | \$<br>109,880 | \$<br>122,805 |

The components of income tax expense (benefit) for each of the last three fiscal years was:

| (In thousands)                          | 2019 |          | 2018 |         | 2017         |
|---|------|----------|------|---------|--------------|
| Current                                 |      |          |      |         |              |
| Federal                                 | \$   | 22,746   | \$   | 22,074  | \$<br>35,610 |
| State and local                         |      | (4,437)  |      | 3,106   | 2,929        |
| International                           |      | (459)    |      | 1,578   | (147)        |
| Total current                           |      | 17,850   |      | 26,758  | 38,392       |
| Deferred                                |      |          |      |         |              |
| Federal                                 |      | (12,409) |      | 4,049   | (945)        |
| State and local                         |      | 6,275    |      | 351     | (78)         |
| International                           |      | 628      |      | (1,205) | (42)         |
| Total deferred                          |      | (5,506)  |      | 3,195   | (1,065)      |
| Total non-current tax expense (benefit) |      | 624      |      | 439     | (312)        |
| Total income tax expense                | \$   | 12,968   | \$   | 30,392  | \$<br>37,015 |

Income tax payments, net of refunds, were \$16.5 million, \$25.7 million and \$47.8 million in fiscal 2019, 2018 and 2017, respectively.

The following table provides a reconciliation of the statutory federal income tax rate to our consolidated effective tax rates:

|  | 2019   | 2018   | 2017   |
|--|--------|--------|--------|
| Statutory federal income tax rate                        | 21.0 % | 32.7 % | 35.0 % |
| Tax rate change revaluation                              | _      | (3.7)  | _      |
| Manufacturing deduction                                  | _      | (2.2)  | (3.3)  |
| State and local income taxes, net of federal tax benefit | 2.7    | 1.8    | 1.6    |
| Foreign tax rate differential                            | 0.8    | (0.7)  | (1.6)  |
| Tax credits - research & development                     | (2.7)  | (0.9)  | (0.7)  |
| Other, net   | 0.3    | 0.7    | (0.9)  |
| Consolidated effective income tax rate                   | 22.1 % | 27.7 % | 30.1 % |

The estimated effective tax rate for fiscal 2019 declined 5.6 percentage points from fiscal 2018 primarily due to the reduced Federal rate under the U.S. Tax Cuts and Jobs Act ("the Act"), which was enacted in December 2017. Another factor was the impact of the favorable permanent items in relation to lower earnings before income taxes in fiscal 2019. The estimated effective tax rate for fiscal 2018 declined 2.4 percentage points from fiscal 2017 primarily due to the federal tax rate reduction under the Act, as well as the revalution of deferred taxes required by the tax rate reduction. Also in fiscal 2017, we recorded a net tax benefit of \$1.9 million on a distribution from our Brazilian operation.

In fiscal 2019, we completed our analysis of the Act and made an accounting policy election to recognize the tax expense on future U.S. inclusions of foreign sourced earnings under the Global Intangible Low-Taxed Income ("GILTI") provision, if any, as a current period expense when incurred. Upon finalizing our analysis, no significant adjustments were recorded.

Deferred tax assets and deferred tax liabilities at March 2, 2019 and March 3, 2018 were:

| (In thousands)                              | 2019         | 2018          |
|---|--------------|---------------|
| Other accruals                              | \$<br>13,530 | \$<br>3,428   |
| Deferred compensation                       | 9,007        | 8,926         |
| Goodwill and other intangibles              | (5,151)      | (4,655)       |
| Depreciation                                | (24,289)     | (19,523)      |
| Liability for unrecognized tax benefits     | 2,547        | 2,850         |
| Net operating losses and tax credits        | 9,913        | 6,272         |
| Valuation allowance on net operating losses | (8,546)      | (4,296)       |
| Unearned income                             | 4,557        | 2,628         |
| Other                                       | 1,550        | 1,067         |
| Deferred tax assets (liabilities)           | \$<br>3,118  | \$<br>(3,303) |

The Company has U.S. federal tax credits as well as state net operating loss carryforwards with a tax effect of \$9.9 million. A valuation allowance of \$8.5 million has been established for these net operating loss carryforwards due to the uncertainty of the use of the tax benefits in future periods.

The Company files income tax returns in the U.S. federal jurisdiction, various U.S. state jurisdictions, Canada, Brazil and other international jurisdictions. The Company is no longer subject to U.S. federal tax examinations for years prior to fiscal 2016, or state and local income tax examinations for years prior to fiscal 2013. The Company is not currently under U.S. federal examination for years subsequent to fiscal year 2015, and there is very limited audit activity of the Company's income tax returns in U.S. state jurisdictions or international jurisdictions.

The Company considers the earnings of its non-U.S. subsidiaries to be indefinitely invested outside of the United States on the basis of estimates that future domestic cash generation will be sufficient to meet future domestic cash needs and specific plans for reinvestment of those subsidiary earnings. Should the Company decide to repatriate the foreign earnings, it would need to adjust the income tax provision in the period it was determined that the earnings will no longer be indefinitely invested outside the U.S.

If we were to prevail on all unrecognized tax benefits recorded, \$3.1 million, \$2.4 million and \$2.1 million for fiscal 2019, 2018 and 2017, respectively, would benefit the effective tax rate. Also included in the balance of unrecognized tax benefits for fiscal 2019, 2018 and 2017, are \$2.0 million, \$2.3 million and \$2.0 million, respectively, of tax benefits that, if recognized, would result in adjustments to deferred taxes.

Penalties and interest related to unrecognized tax benefits are recorded in income tax expense. For fiscal 2019, we accrued penalties and interest related to unrecognized tax benefits of \$0.3 million. For fiscal 2018 and 2017, the accrual was \$0.4 million and \$0.4 million, respectively.

The following table provides a reconciliation of the total amounts of gross unrecognized tax benefits:

| (In thousands)   |     | 2019  |    | 2018  | 2017        |
|--|-----|-------|----|-------|-------------|
| Gross unrecognized tax benefits at beginning of year               | \$  | 4,705 | \$ | 4,075 | \$<br>4,512 |
| Gross increases in tax positions for prior years                   | 500 |       |    | 614   | 54          |
| Gross decreases in tax positions for prior years                   |     | (377) |    | (122) | (233)       |
| Gross increases based on tax positions related to the current year |     | 1,067 |    | 639   | 508         |
| Settlements  |     | (303) |    | _     | (23)        |
| Statute of limitations expiration                                  |     | (481) |    | (519) | (743)       |
| Revaluation impact   |     | _     |    | 18    | _           |
| Gross unrecognized tax benefits at end of year                     | \$  | 5,111 | \$ | 4,705 | \$<br>4,075 |

The total liability for unrecognized tax benefits is expected to decrease by approximately \$0.5 million during fiscal 2020 due to lapsing of statutes.

## 14. Earnings per Share

Basic earnings per share is computed by dividing net earnings by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding. Diluted earnings per share is computed by dividing net earnings by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding, including the dilutive effects of stock options, SARs and nonvested shares. The following table presents a reconciliation of the share amounts used in the computation of basic and diluted earnings per share:

| (In thousands)  | 2019   | 2018   | 2017   |
|---|--------|--------|--------|
| Basic earnings per share - weighted average common shares outstanding   | 27,802 | 28,534 | 28,781 |
| Weighted average effect of nonvested share grants and assumed exercise of stock options   | 280    | 270    | 112    |
| Diluted earnings per share - weighted average common shares and potential common shares outstanding   | 28,082 | 28,804 | 28,893 |
| Stock awards excluded from the calculation of earnings per share because the award price was greater than the average market price of the common shares | 134    | 141    | _      |

## **Business Segment Data**

We have four reporting segments:

- The Architectural Framing Systems segment designs, engineers, fabricates and finishes the aluminum frames used in customized aluminum and glass window, curtainwall, storefront and entrance systems comprising the outside skin and entrances of commercial, institutional and high-end multi-family residential buildings. We have aggregated six operating segments into this reporting segment based on their similar products, customers, distribution methods, production processes and economic characteristics.
- The Architectural Glass segment fabricates coated, high-performance glass used globally in customized window and wall systems comprising the
- outside skin of commercial, institutional and high-end multi-family residential buildings.

  The Architectural Services segment provides full-service installation of the walls of glass, windows and other curtainwall products making up the outside skin of commercial and institutional buildings.
- The Large-Scale Optical Technologies (LSO) segment manufactures value-added glass and acrylic products for framing and display applications.

| (In thousands)                |              | 2019      |    | 2018      | 2017            |
|-------------------------------|--------------|-----------|----|-----------|-----------------|
| Net Sales                     |              |           |    |           |                 |
| Architectural Framing Systems | \$           | 720,829   | \$ | 677,198   | \$<br>385,978   |
| Architectural Glass           |              | 367,203   |    | 384,137   | 411,881         |
| Architectural Services        |              | 286,314   |    | 213,757   | 270,937         |
| Large-Scale Optical           |              | 88,493    |    | 88,303    | 89,710          |
| Intersegment elimination      |              | (60,202)  |    | (37,222)  | (43,973)        |
| Total                         | \$           | 1,402,637 | \$ | 1,326,173 | \$<br>1,114,533 |
| Operating Income (Loss)       |              |           |    |           |                 |
| Architectural Framing Systems | \$           | 49,660    | \$ | 59,031    | \$<br>44,768    |
| Architectural Glass           |              | 16,503    |    | 32,764    | 44,656          |
| Architectural Services        |              | 30,509    |    | 10,420    | 18,494          |
| Large-Scale Optical           |              | 23,003    |    | 22,000    | 22,467          |
| Corporate and other           |              | (52,391)  |    | (9,931)   | (8,160)         |
| Total                         | \$           | 67,284    | \$ | 114,284   | \$<br>122,225   |
| Depreciation and Amortization | _            |           |    |           |                 |
| Architectural Framing Systems | \$           | 28,937    | \$ | 31,764    | \$<br>12,404    |
| Architectural Glass           |              | 13,009    |    | 14,525    | 15,912          |
| Architectural Services        |              | 1,234     |    | 1,325     | 1,364           |
| Large-Scale Optical           |              | 3,692     |    | 4,556     | 4,785           |
| Corporate and other           |              | 2,926     |    | 2,673     | 1,142           |
| Total                         | \$           | 49,798    | \$ | 54,843    | \$<br>35,607    |
| Capital Expenditures          |              |           |    |           |                 |
| Architectural Framing Systems | \$           | 19,098    | \$ | 15,273    | \$<br>14,070    |
| Architectural Glass           |              | 27,722    |    | 26,228    | 44,439          |
| Architectural Services        |              | 1,433     |    | 2,510     | 1,981           |
| Large-Scale Optical           |              | 6,989     |    | 3,307     | 1,510           |
| Corporate and other           |              | 5,475     |    | 5,878     | 6,061           |
| Total                         | \$           | 60,717    | \$ | 53,196    | \$<br>68,061    |
| Identifiable Assets           | <del>-</del> |           |    |           |                 |
| Architectural Framing Systems | \$           | 617,001   | \$ | 618,455   | \$<br>359,633   |
| Architectural Glass           |              | 281,817   |    | 250,407   | 254,840         |
| Architectural Services        |              | 59,227    |    | 53,424    | 70,875          |
| Large-Scale Optical           |              | 61,031    |    | 58,523    | 58,198          |
| Corporate and other           |              | 49,092    |    | 41,511    | 41,112          |
| Total                         | \$           | 1,068,168 | \$ | 1,022,320 | \$<br>784,658   |
|                               | _            |           | _  |           |                 |

Due to the varying combinations and integration of individual window, storefront and curtainwall systems, the Company has determined that it is impractical to report product revenues generated by class of product beyond the segment revenues currently reported.

Segment operating income is equal to net sales less cost of sales and operating expenses. Operating income does not include interest expense or a provision for income taxes. Corporate and other includes miscellaneous corporate activity not allocable to our segments and, in fiscal 2019, also includes \$40.9 million of project-related charges on acquired contracts. Identifiable assets for Corporate and other include all short- and long-term available-for-sale securities.

The following table presents net sales, based on the location in which the sale originated, and long-lived assets, representing property, plant and equipment, net of related depreciation, by geographic region.

| (In thousands)    | 2019            | 2018            | 2017            |
|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Net Sales         |                 |                 |                 |
| United States     | \$<br>1,259,319 | \$<br>1,187,922 | \$<br>1,031,214 |
| Canada            | 128,735         | 122,981         | 65,958          |
| Brazil            | 14,583          | 15,270          | 17,361          |
| Total             | \$<br>1,402,637 | \$<br>1,326,173 | \$<br>1,114,533 |
| Long-Lived Assets |                 |                 |                 |
| United States     | \$<br>297,072   | \$<br>283,432   | \$<br>227,145   |
| Canada            | 12,563          | 13,384          | 13,303          |
| Brazil            | 6,188           | 7,247           | 6,300           |
| Total             | \$<br>315,823   | \$<br>304,063   | \$<br>246,748   |

Apogee's export net sales from U.S. operations of \$56.3 million for fiscal 2019 were approximately 4 percent of consolidated net sales; export net sales of \$49.1 million for fiscal 2018 were approximately 4 percent of consolidated net sales; and export sales of \$76.2 million for fiscal 2017 were approximately 7 percent of consolidated net sales.

### 16. Quarterly Data (Unaudited)

|                                       | Quarter |         |    |            |               |    |              |                 |
|---------------------------------------|---------|---------|----|------------|---------------|----|--------------|-----------------|
| (In thousands, except per share data) |         | First   |    | Second (1) | Third         |    | Fourth       | Total           |
| 2019                                  |         |         |    |            |               |    |              |                 |
| Net sales                             | \$      | 336,531 | \$ | 362,133    | \$<br>357,718 | \$ | 346,255      | \$<br>1,402,637 |
| Gross profit                          |         | 80,730  |    | 84,466     | 84,090        |    | 44,279       | 293,565         |
| Net earnings (loss)                   |         | 15,373  |    | 20,513     | 21,891        |    | (12,083) (2) | 45,694          |
| Earnings (loss) per share - basic     |         | 0.55    |    | 0.73       | 0.79          |    | (0.45)       | 1.64            |
| Earnings (loss) per share - diluted   |         | 0.54    |    | 0.72       | 0.78          |    | (0.45)       | 1.63            |
| 2018                                  |         |         |    |            |               |    |              |                 |
| Net sales                             | \$      | 272,307 | \$ | 343,907    | \$<br>356,506 | \$ | 353,453      | \$<br>1,326,173 |
| Gross profit                          |         | 70,294  |    | 86,001     | 91,559        |    | 85,664       | 333,518         |
| Net earnings                          |         | 16,104  |    | 17,409     | 23,646        |    | 22,329       | 79,488          |
| Earnings per share - basic            |         | 0.56    |    | 0.60       | 0.82          |    | 0.79         | \$<br>2.79      |
| Earnings per share - diluted          |         | 0.56    |    | 0.60       | 0.82          |    | 0.78         | \$<br>2.76      |

Per share amounts are computed independently for each of the quarters presented. The sum of the quarters may not equal the total year amount due to the impact of changes in average quarterly shares outstanding, and all other quarterly amounts may not equal the total year due to rounding.

## ITEM 9. CHANGES IN AND DISAGREEMENTS WITH ACCOUNTANTS ON ACCOUNTING AND FINANCIAL DISCLOSURE

None.

## ITEM 9A. CONTROLS AND PROCEDURES

Evaluation of Disclosure Controls and Procedures. As of the end of the period covered by this report (the Evaluation Date), we carried out an evaluation, under the supervision and with the participation of management, including the Chief Executive Officer and the Chief Financial Officer, of the effectiveness of the design and operation of our disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Rules 13a-15(e) or 15d-15(e) of the Exchange Act). Based upon that evaluation, the Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer concluded that, as of the Evaluation Date, our disclosure controls and procedures were effective to ensure that information required to be disclosed by the Company in the reports that it files or submits under the Exchange Act is (i) recorded, processed, summarized and reported within the time periods specified in applicable rules and forms, and (ii) accumulated and communicated to our management, including our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosure.

Management's Annual Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting. The report of management required under this Item 9A is contained on page 23 in Item 8 of this Annual Report on Form 10-K under the caption "Management's Annual Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting."

Attestation Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm. The attestation report required under this Item 9A is contained on page 24 in Item 8 of this Annual Report on Form 10-K under the caption "Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm."

Changes in Internal Control over Financial Reporting. There have not been any changes in our internal control over financial reporting (as such term is defined in Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f) under the Exchange Act) during the most recent fiscal quarter covered by this report that would have materially affected, or are reasonably likely to materially affect, the Company's internal control over financial reporting.

# ITEM 9B. OTHER INFORMATION

None.

# PART III

# ITEM 10. DIRECTORS, EXECUTIVE OFFICERS, CODE OF ETHICS AND CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

# Directors of the Registrant

| Name               | Age | Director Class and Term            | Independence | Board Committee  | Director Since |
|--------------------|-----|------------------------------------|--------------|--|----------------|
| Bernard P. Aldrich | 69  | Class II<br>Term Expiring in 2021  | Independent  | Non-Executive Board Chair  | 1999           |
| Jerome L. Davis    | 63  | Class III<br>Term Expiring in 2019 | Independent  | Chair, Compensation Committee  | 2004           |
| Sara L. Hays       | 54  | Class III<br>Term Expiring in 2019 | Independent  | Member, Compensation Committee and<br>Nominating and Corporate Governance<br>Committee                             | 2005           |
| Lloyd E. Johnson   | 65  | Class I<br>Term Expiring in 2020   | Independent  | Chair, Audit Committee (Audit Committee Financial Expert)  | 2017           |
| Donald A. Nolan    | 58  | Class I<br>Term Expiring in 2020   | Independent  | Member, Compensation Committee and<br>Nominating and Corporate Governance<br>Committee                             | 2013           |
| Herbert K. Parker  | 61  | Class II<br>Term Expiring in 2021  | Independent  | Member, Audit Committee and Nominating and<br>Corporate Governance Committee (Audit<br>Committee Financial Expert) | 2018           |

<sup>(1)</sup> We acquired EFCO in the second quarter of fiscal 2018; refer to Note 2 for additional information

<sup>(2)</sup> Fiscal 2019 fourth quarter net loss includes \$42.6 million of project-related charges on contracts that were acquired with the purchase of EFCO.

| Mark A. Pompa   | 54 | Class III<br>Term Expiring in 2019 | Independent     | Member, Audit Committee (Audit Committee Financial Expert)                               | 2018 |
|---|----|------------------------------------|-----------------|--|------|
| Joseph F. Puishys<br>Chief Executive Officer and<br>President | 60 | Class II<br>Term Expiring in 2021  | Not Independent | N/A  | 2011 |
| Richard V. Reynolds   | 70 | Class III<br>Term Expiring in 2019 | Independent     | Chair, Nominating and Corporate Governance<br>Committee                                  | 2006 |
| Patricia K. Wagner  | 56 | Class I<br>Term Expiring in 2020   | Independent     | Member, Audit Committee and Compensation<br>Committee (Audit Committee Financial Expert) | 2016 |

Our Restated Articles of Incorporation (the "Articles") provide that our Board of Directors will be divided into three classes of directors of as nearly equal size as possible and the term of each class of directors is three years. Our Articles further provide that the total number of directors will be determined exclusively by our Board of Directors. The term of one class expires each year in rotation.

Bernard P. Aldrich
Biography - Mr. Aldrich retired as Chief Executive Officer and President, and a director of Rimage Corporation (now Qumu Corporation), a publicly-held designer and manufacturer of on-demand publishing and duplicating systems for CD and DVD-recordable media, in 2009, after 12 years of service in those capacities. Prior to joining Rimage Corporation in 1997, he served

as President of several manufacturing companies controlled by Activar, Inc., an industrial plastics and construction supply company, from 1995 to 1996. Mr. Aldrich served as President of Colwell Industries, a company that designs, manufactures and distributes color merchandising tools, from 1992 to 1994; and as Chief Financial Officer of Advance Machine Co., a manufacturer and supplier of equipment for the commercial floor care industry, from 1973 to 1991.

### Skills and Qualifications:

- Executive leadership

- Enterprise risk management

- Manufacturing operations

- International

- Corporate governance - Public and private company board

- Business operations

experience

- Financial management

- Leadership development

- Executive compensation

Public directorships - Rimage Corporation (1997 - 2009)

## Jerome L. Davis

Biography - Mr. Davis has served as the Executive Vice President and Chief Revenue Officer of the Metropolitan Washington Airports Authority in Washington, D.C., which manages and operates Ronald Reagan National and Dulles International Airports, since September 2014. He previously served as Corporate Vice President of Food and Retail for Waste Management, Inc., the leading provider of integrated environmental solutions in North America, from 2010 to 2012. Mr. Davis was Global Vice President, Service Excellence for Electronic Data Systems, a business and technology services company, from 2003 to 2005. From 2001 to 2003 at Electronic Data Systems, he served as Chief Client Executive Officer and President, Americas for Business Process Management. From 1991 to 2001, he served as President of the Commercial Solutions Division of Maytag Corporation and as Senior Vice President of Sales for Maytag's Appliances Division from 1998 to 2001. He also served in executive positions at Frito Lay and senior positions at Procete & Gamble.

## Skills and Qualifications:

- Executive leadership

- Strategy

- Sales and business development

- Marketing

- Enterprise risk management

- Business operations

- International

- Commercial real estate development

- Investor relations

- Corporate governance - Public company board experience

- Consumer/retail/consulting

- Information technology

Public directorships - GameStop Corporation (2005 - Present)

Biography - Ms. Hays is Principal and Founder of SLH Advisors, a privately-held project management and consulting services business she founded in 2011. From 2015 to 2017, she served as Managing Director and Co-Leader of the North American Board Practice of Allegis Partners, an executive search firm. She served as Managing Director, Operations and General Counsel and member of the Executive and Investment Committees of Wrightwood Capital LLC (now part of Ares Management LLC), a real estate finance and investment company, from 2005 to 2011. Prior to joining Wrightwood Capital LLC, she spent over 10 years at Hyatt Hotels, a global hospitality company, initially as Development Counsel and ultimately serving as Senior Vice President and General Counsel and a member of Hyatt Hotels' Managing Committee responsible for managing the legal risks associated with Hyatt Hotels' worldwide operations, transactions and owned assets. Before joining Hyatt Hotels, Ms. Hays was an associate practicing commercial real estate law with the Chicago law firm of Coffield Ungaretti & Harris (now part of Nixon Peabody) from 1989 to 1994.

## Skills and Qualifications:

- Executive leadership - Corporate governance

- Commercial real estate industry

- Enterprise risk management

- Legal and regulatory compliance

- Private company board experience

- Debt and equity structuring

- Strategy development and execution - Complex transactions, including acquisitions and workouts

- Hospitality industries

## Lloyd E. Johnson

Biography - Mr. Johnson was the Global Managing Director, Finance and Internal Audit of Accenture Corporation, a global management consulting and professional services firm providing strategy, consulting, digital technology and operations services, from 2004 to 2015. Prior to joining Accenture Corporation, he served as Executive Director, M&A and General Auditor for Delphi Automotive PLC, a vehicle components manufacturer, from 1999 to 2004. From 1997 to 1999, he served as Corporate Vice President, Finance and Chief Audit Executive for Emerson Electric Corporation, a diversified global manufacturing company serving industrial, commercial and consumer markets. Earlier in his career, he held senior finance leadership roles at Sara Lee Knit Products, a division of Sara Lee Corporation; Shaw Food Industries, a privately-held food service supply company; and Harper, Wiggins & Johnson, CPA, a regional accounting firm. Mr. Johnson began his career with Coopers & Lybrand, a global accounting firm that became part of PricewaterhouseCoopers, a global accounting firm.

### Skills and Qualifications:

- Executive leadership - Public accounting and audit
- Financial management - Business operations
- Enterprise risk management
- Mergers and acquisitions - International business
- Information technology, including cybersecurity
- Leadership development
- Executive compensation
- Corporate governance
- Industrial, commercial and consumer markets

### Donald A. Nolan

Biography - Mr. Nolan served as President and Chief Executive Officer of Kennametal Inc., an industrial technology leader serving customers across the aerospace, earthworks, energy, industrial production, transportation and infrastructure industries, from 2014 to 2016. Prior to joining Kennametal Inc., he served as President of the Materials Group for Avery Dennison Corporation, a global leader in labeling and packaging materials and solutions, from 2008 to 2014. Mr. Nolan served in various executive capacities for Valspar Corporation, a global leader in the paint and coatings industry, from 1996 to 2008. Earlier in his career, Mr. Nolan served in marketing and sales positions with Loctite Corporation, Ashland Chemical Company, General Electric Company and the Timken Company.

### Skills and Qualifications:

- Executive leadership - Business operations
- Strategy development and execution
- Marketing and sales

- Financial management
- International business
- Mergers and acquisitions
- Enterprise risk management
- Leadership development
- Corporate governance
- Executive compensation
- Public and private company board
- experience

Public directorships - Kennametal Inc. (2014 - 2016)

# Herbert K. Parker

Biography - Mr. Parker is the retired Executive Vice President - Operation Excellence of Harman International Industries, Inc., a worldwide leader in the development, manufacture, and marketing of high quality, high-fidelity audio products, lighting solutions, and electronic systems. He joined Harman International in June 2008 as Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer and served in that capacity to 2015. He served as Executive Vice President - Operation Excellence from 2015 to 2017. Prior to joining Harman International Industries, Inc., Mr. Parker served in various senior financial positions with ABB Ltd. (known as ABB Group), a global power and technology company, from 1980 to 2006, including as the Chief Financial Officer of the Global Automation Division from 2002 to 2005 and the Americas Region from 2006 to 2008. Mr. Parker began his career as a staff accountant with C-E

# Skills and Qualifications:

- Executive leadership - Accounting and audit

management

- Financial management
- Mergers and aquisitions - Property and asset acquisition and
- Investor relations
- Operations
- Sarbanes-Oxley compliance
- Enterprise risk management
- International business
- Leadership development
- Corporate governance
- Public company board experience

Public directorships - TriMas Corporation (2015 - Present); nVent Electric plc (2018 - Present); American Axle & Manufacturing Holdings, Inc. (2018 -Present); and TMS International Corporation (2012 - 2014)

### Mark A. Pompa

Biography - Mr. Pompa has served as the Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer of EMCOR Group, Inc., a Fortune 500 leader in mechanical and electrical construction services, industrial and energy infrastructure and building services, since 2006. Previously, he was Senior Vice President and Chief Accounting Officer of EMCOR from 2003 to 2006 and Treasurer from 2003 to 2007. He joined EMCOR in 1994, serving as Vice President and Controller until 2003. Prior to joining EMCOR, Mr. Pompa was an Audit and Business Advisory Manager at Arthur Andersen LLP.

### Skills and Qualifications:

- Executive leadership Business operations Enterprise risk management
   Financial management Mergers and acquisitions Leadership development
   Accounting and audit Strategy development and execution Executive compensation
- Commercial construction industry

### Joseph F. Puishys

Biography - Mr. Puishys has served as our Chief Executive Officer and President since August 2011. Prior to joining our Company, he served in various leadership positions at Honeywell International, Inc., a Fortune 100 diversified technology and manufacturing company, for over 32 years. He served as President of Honeywell Environment & Combustion Controls from 2008 to 2011; President of Honeywell Building Solutions, America from 2004 to 2005; President of Bendix Friction Materials from 2002 to 2004; Vice President and General Manager of Garrett Engine Boosting Systems from 2000 to 2002; Vice President and General Manager, Aftermarket, Allied Signal Turbocharging Systems from 1996 to 2000; Vice President, Logistics, Allied Signal Automotive Products Group from 1992 to 1996; and various accounting and financial positions from 1979 to 1992.

## Skills and Qualifications:

- Executive leadership - Strategy development and execution - Leadership development
- Financial management - Manufacturing operations - International operations
- Commercial building industry - Sales - Corporate governance
- Commercial construction industry - Business operations - Public company board experience

Public directorships - Arctic Cat, Inc. (2013 - 2017)

### Richard V. Reynolds

Biography - Mr. Reynolds retired from the U.S. Air Force as a Lieutenant General in 2005 after 34 years of service, having served as Vice Commander, Air Force Materiel Command from 2003 to 2005; Commander, Aeronautical Systems Center of Air Force Materiel Command from 2001 to 2003; Commander, Air Force Flight Test Center of Air Force Materiel Command from 1998 to 2001; Program Executive Office, Airlift and Trainers of the Air Force Program Executive Office from 1996 to 1998; and various other operational and leadership positions, from 1971 to 1996. General Reynolds is the owner of The VanFleet Group, LLC, a privately held aerospace consulting firm he formed in 2005. He also served as Senior Manager/Senior Business Advisor of BearingPoint, Inc., an international management and technology consulting firm, from 2006 to 2009.

## Skills and Qualifications:

- Executive leadership - Leadership development - Corporate governance - Government relations - Regulatory compliance - Public company board experience - Government contracting and procurement - Enterprise risk management - Research and development / product development - Information technology, including cybersecurity - Supply chain logistics and management - management - Supply chain logistics and cybersecurity - management - Supply chain logistics and - Supply chain logistics - Supp

Public directorships - Allison Transmission Holdings, Inc. (2010 - Present)

## Patricia K. Wagner

Biography - Ms. Wagner has served as Group President of U.S. Utilities, overseeing San Diego Gas & Electric, Southern California Gas Company ("SoCalGas") and Sempra Energy's investment in Oncor Electric Delivery Company LLC, since 2018. Since joining Sempra Energy in 1995, she has served in several leadership positions for the Sempra Energy family of companies, including Chief Executive Officer of SoCalGas from 2017 to 2018; Executive Vice President of Sempra Energy in 2016; President and Chief

Executive Officer of Sempra U.S. Gas & Power, a leading developer and generator of renewable energy and natural gas solutions and operator of power plants, natural gas storage facilities, pipelines and distribution utilities, from 2014 to 2016; and other leadership positions for the Sempra Energy family of companies from 1995 to 2014. Prior to joining Sempra Energy in 1995, Ms. Wagner held management positions at Fluor Daniel, an engineering, procurement, construction and maintenance services company. Earlier in her career, Ms. Wagner held positions at McGaw Laboratories and Allergan Pharmaceuticals.

### Skills and Oualifications:

- Executive leadership
- Business operations
- Financial management
- Accounting and audit
- Corporate governance
- Strategy development and execution
- Energy industry
- Enterprise risk management
   Information technology
- Mergers and acquisitions
- Regulatory compliance
- Leadership development
- Executive compensation

## **Board Leadership Structure**

Our Board of Directors separated the roles of Chair of the Board and Chief Executive Officer in 2011, and Mr. Aldrich has served as our Non-Executive Chair since 2011. In this capacity, Mr. Aldrich has chaired our annual meetings of shareholders, the meetings of our Board of Directors and executive sessions of our independent directors. The Non-Executive Chair of our Board, in consultation with our Chief Executive Officer, establishes the agenda for each meeting of our Board of Directors.

## Criteria for Membership on our Board of Directors

Director candidates should possess the highest personal and professional ethics, integrity and values; be committed to representing the long-term interests of our stakeholders; have an inquisitive and objective perspective, practical wisdom and mature judgment; and be willing to challenge management in a constructive manner. Our Board of Directors strives for membership that is diverse in gender, ethnicity, age, geographic location, and business skills and experience at policy-making levels. In addition, director candidates must be willing to devote sufficient time to carrying out their duties and responsibilities effectively, and should be committed to serving on our Board of Directors for an extended period of time.

### **Procedure for Evaluating Director Nominees**

Our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee's procedure for reviewing the qualifications of all nominees for membership on our Board of Directors includes making a preliminary assessment of each proposed nominee, based upon resume and biographical information, willingness to serve and other background information, business experience and leadership skills. All director candidates who continue in the process are then interviewed by members of our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee and a majority of our other current directors. Our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee makes recommendations to our Board of Directors for inclusion in the slate of director nominees at a meeting of shareholders, or for appointment by our Board of Directors to fill a vacancy. Prior to recommending a director to stand for re-election for another term, our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee applies its director candidate selection criteria, including a director's past contributions to our Board of Directors, effectiveness as a director and desire to continue to serve as a director.

### Retirement Policy

Our Board of Directors has established a policy that, unless otherwise approved by a majority of our directors, no individual may stand for election to our Board after his or her 72nd birthday.

## Board Meetings and 2018 Annual Meeting of Shareholders

During fiscal 2019, our Board of Directors met eleven times and our non-employee directors met in executive session without our Chief Executive Officer or any other members of management being present four times. Each of our directors attended at least 75% of the regularly scheduled and special meetings of our Board of Directors and the Board committees on which he or she served that were held during the time he or she was a director during fiscal 2019.

All members of our Board of Directors are expected to attend our annual meetings of shareholders, and all the members of our Board of Directors serving at the time of our 2018 Annual Meeting of Shareholders and who continued to serve on our Board after such meeting attended such meeting.

# **Board Committee Responsibilities and Meetings**

We currently have three standing Board Committees: Audit, Compensation, and Nominating and Corporate Governance. Each Committee operates under a written charter that is available on our website at <a href="https://www.apog.com">www.apog.com</a> by clicking on "Investors" and selecting "Governance" and then selecting the applicable Board Committee charter.

| Board Committee  | Responsibilities   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| AUDIT COMMITTEE  | - Directly responsible for the appointment, compensation, retention and oversight of the work  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| All Members Independent  | of the firm that serves as the independent accountants to audit our financial statements.  - Oversees our system of financial controls, internal audit procedures and internal audit   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| This Committee has oversight responsibilities for our independent registered public accounting firm.                                       | function.  Oversees our program to ensure compliance with legal and regulatory requirements and ethical business practices.  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Each member meets the independence and experience requirements of the NASDAQ listing standards and the SEC.                                | <ul> <li>Assesses and establishes policies and procedures to manage our financial reporting and internal control risk.</li> <li>Establishes policies and procedures for the pre-approval of all services by our independent</li> </ul>   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Each member is an "audit committee financial expert" under the rules of the SEC.   | registered public accounting firm.  - Establishes procedures for the receipt, retention and treatment of complaints regarding accounting, internal controls and auditing matters.  - Considers the accounting firm's independence.   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| COMPENSATION COMMITTEE   | - Establishes our executive compensation philosophy and compensation programs that comply  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| All Members Independent  | with this philosophy.  Determines the compensation of our executive officers and other members of senior management.  Administers our stock incentive plans in which our employees participate.  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| This Committee administers our executive compensation program.   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Each member is a "non-employee" director, as defined in<br>the Exchange Act, and is an "outside director" as defined<br>in Section 162(m). | <ul> <li>Administers our annual cash and long-term incentive plans for executive officers and other members of senior management.</li> <li>Reviews its decisions on compensation for our Chief Executive Officer with the full Board of Directors prior to communicating those decisions to our Chief Executive Officer.</li> <li>Directly responsible for the appointment, compensation, retention and oversight of the independent compensation consultant.</li> </ul>   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| NOMINATING AND CORPORATE<br>GOVERNANCE COMMITTEE   | Develops a Board succession plan and establishes and implements procedures to review the qualifications for membership on our Board of Directors, including nominees recommended   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| All Members Independent  This Committee identifies and evaluates Board candidates and oversees our corporate governance practices.         | by shareholders.  Assesses our compliance with our Corporate Governance Guidelines.  - Reviews our organizational structure and senior management succession plans.  - Makes recommendations to our Board of Directors regarding the composition and responsibilities of our Board committees and compensation for directors.  - Administers an annual performance review of our Board committees, Board of Directors as a whole and our directors whose terms are expiring.  - Administers an annual review of the performance of our Chief Executive Officer, which includes soliciting assessments from all non-employee directors.  - Administers our stock and deferred compensation plans in which our non-employee directors participate. |  |  |  |  |  |  |

The table below provides fiscal 2019 membership and meeting information for each of our standing Board committees.

| Name                              | Audit Committee | Compensation Committee | Nominating and Corporate<br>Governance Committee |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------|------------------------|--|
| Bernard P. Aldrich <sup>(1)</sup> |                 |                        |  |
| Jerome L. Davis                   |                 | C                      |  |
| Sara L. Hays                      |                 | M                      | M  |
| Lloyd E. Johnson                  | C (2) (3)       |                        |  |
| John T. Manning                   | M (3) (4)       |                        | M (4)  |
| Robert J. Marzec                  | C (3) (5)       |                        |  |
| Donald A. Nolan                   | M (3) (6)       | M                      | M (6)  |
| Herbert K. Parker                 | M (3) (7)       |                        | M (7)  |
| Mark A. Pompa                     | M (8)           |                        |  |
| Joseph F. Puishys                 |                 |                        |  |
| Richard V. Reynolds               |                 |                        | C  |
| Patricia K. Wagner                | M (3)           | M                      |  |
| Fiscal 2019 Meetings              | 7               | 5                      | 4  |

C = Committee Chair M = Committee Member

- (1) Mr. Aldrich serves as Non-Executive Chair of our Board.
- (2) Mr. Johnson served as Chair since June 28, 2018 and as a member prior to June 28, 2018.
- (3) Audit committee financial expert under the rules of the SEC.
- (4) Mr. Manning served as a member of the Audit Committee and Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee through June 28, 2018, when he retired from our Board.
- (5) Mr. Marzec served as Chair of the Audit Committee through June 28, 2018, when he retired from our Board.
- (6) Mr. Nolan served as a member of the Audit Committee through June 28, 2018 and as a member of the Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee since June 28, 2018.
- (7) Mr. Parker has served as a member of the Audit Committee since April 27, 2018 and as a member of the Nominating and Corporate Governance since October
- (8) Mr. Pompa has served as a member of the Audit Committee since October 3, 2018.

## Risk Oversight by Our Board of Directors

Our Board of Directors oversees our enterprise risk management processes, focusing on our business, strategic, financial, operational, information technology and overall enterprise risk. Our Board determined that oversight of our Company's strategy and overall enterprise risk management program is more effective when performed by the full Board, utilizing the skills and experiences of all Board members. In addition, our Board of Directors executes its overall responsibility for risk management through its Committees, as follows:

- Our Audit Committee has primary responsibility for risk management relating to the reliability of our financial reporting processes, system of
  internal controls and corporate compliance program. Our Audit Committee receives quarterly reports from management, our independent registered
  public accounting firm and internal audit partner regarding our financial reporting processes, internal controls and public filings. It also receives
  quarterly updates from management regarding Code of Conduct issues, litigation and legal claims, and other compliance matters.
- Our Compensation Committee, with assistance from its independent compensation consultant, oversees risk management associated with our
  compensation programs, policies and practices with respect to both executive compensation and compensation in general.
- Our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee oversees risk management associated with succession planning, non-employee director compensation, overall Board of Directors and Board Committee performance, and corporate governance practices.

### Shareholder Recommendation or Nomination of a Director candidate

Our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee considers recommendations of director candidates. A shareholder who wishes to recommend a director candidate to our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee for nomination by our Board of Directors at our next annual meeting, or for vacancies on our Board of Directors that arise between meetings, must provide our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee with sufficient written documentation to permit a determination by our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee and our Board of Directors as to whether such candidate meets the required and desired director selection criteria set forth in our Corporate Governance Guidelines and the factors discussed under the heading "Criteria for Membership on Our Board of Directors," above. Such documentation and the name of the director candidate must be sent by U.S. mail to our Corporate Secretary at Apogee Enterprises, Inc., 4400 West 78th Street, Suite 520, Minneapolis, MN 55435. Our Corporate Secretary will send properly submitted shareholder recommendations to the Chair of our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee for consideration at a future committee meeting.

Director candidates recommended by shareholders in compliance with these procedures and who meet the criteria outlined above will be evaluated by our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee in the same manner as nominees proposed by other sources.

Alternatively, shareholders may directly nominate a person for election to our Board of Directors at a future annual meeting by complying with the procedures set forth in our Amended and Restated By-laws and the rules and regulations of the SEC. Our Amended and Restated By-laws are available on our website at <a href="https://www.apog.com">www.apog.com</a> by clicking on "Investors", select "Governance", then "By-laws."

### Corporate Governance Section on our Website

Information related to our code of ethics and corporate governance is available on our website at www.apog.com by clicking on "Investors," selecting "Governance" and then selecting the applicable document or information. This information includes:

- Management Background and Experience Board Committee Charters
- Our Code of Business Ethics and Conduct
- How to Contact the Board
- Our Corporate Governance Guidelines
- Our Restated Articles of Incorporation
- Our Amended and Restated By-laws

We will provide copies of any of the foregoing information without charge upon written request to: Corporate Secretary, Apogee Enterprises, Inc., 4400 West 78th Street, Suite 520, Minneapolis, Minnesota, 55435.

## Code of Business Ethics and Conduct

Our Board of Directors has adopted our Code of Business Ethics and Conduct (our "Code of Conduct"), which is a statement of our high standards for ethical behavior and legal compliance. All of our employees and all members of our Board of Directors are required to comply with our Code of Conduct.

### Corporate Governance Guidelines

Our Corporate Governance Guidelines outline the role, composition, qualifications, operation and other policies applicable to our Board of Directors and are revised as necessary to continue to reflect evolving corporate governance practices.

### Executive Officers

| Name                | Age | Positions with Apogee Enterprises and Past Experience  |
|---------------------|-----|--|
| Joseph F. Puishys   | 60  | Chief Executive Officer and President of the Company since 2011. President of Honeywell's Environmental and Combustion Controls division from 2008 through 2011, President of Honeywell's Building Solutions from 2005 through 2008. |
| James S. Porter     | 58  | Chief Financial Officer since 2005 and Executive Vice President since 2015. Vice President of Strategy and Planning from 2002 through 2005.  |
| Patricia A. Beithon | 65  | General Counsel and Corporate Secretary since 1999.  |
| Brent C. Jewell     | 44  | Senior Vice President, Business Development and Strategy since 2018. Senior leadership positions at Valspar's General Industrial Americas and North America Wood Coatings divisions from 2010 to 2017.                               |
| Gary R. Johnson     | 57  | Senior Vice President since 2018. Treasurer since 2001, Vice President from 2001 to 2018. Various tax and treasury positions from 1995 to 2000.  |

Executive officers are elected annually by the Board of Directors to serve for a one-year period. There are no family relationships between any of the executive officers or directors of the Company.

# Section 16(a) Beneficial Ownership Reporting Compliance

Section 16(a) of the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "Exchange Act") requires our directors and executive officers and persons who own more than 10% of our securities to file with Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC") initial reports of ownership of those securities on Form 3 and reports of changes in ownership on Form 4 or Form 5. Specific due dates for these reports have been established by the SEC, and we are required to disclose in our proxy statement any failure to timely file the required reports by these dates. Based solely on our review of the copies of these reports received by us and written representations from our directors and executive officers, we believe that our directors and executive officers complied with all Section 16(a) filing requirements for the fiscal year ended March 2, 2019.

## ITEM 11. EXECUTIVE AND DIRECTOR COMPENSATION

## Non-Employee Director Compensation

Our Board of Directors approves the compensation for members of our Board of Directors and Board committees based on the recommendations of our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee. We target compensation for service on our Board of Directors and Board committees generally at the 50th percentile for board service at companies in our peer group of companies, using the same peer group used for executive compensation purposes and described under the heading "Peer Group". Generally,

our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee reviews and discusses the compensation data and analysis provided by management using a third-party compensation database. Our Chief Executive Officer participates in the discussions on compensation for members of our Board of Directors. Directors who are employees receive no additional compensation for serving on our Board of Directors.

The following table describes the compensation arrangements with our non-employee directors as of the end of fiscal 2019.

| Compensation   | Fiscal 2019                            |
|--|--|
| Annual Cash Retainers:                               |  |
| Non-Executive Chair of the Board                     | \$135,000 (1)                          |
| Board Member   | 60,000                                 |
| Audit Committee Chair                                | 30,000                                 |
| Audit Committee Member                               | 15,000                                 |
| Compensation Committee Chair                         | 25,000                                 |
| Compensation Committee Member                        | 10,000                                 |
| Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee Chair  | 25,000                                 |
| Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee Member | 10,000                                 |
| Equity Awards  | 95,004 (2)                             |
| Charitable Matching Contribution Program             | \$2,000 maximum aggregate annual match |

(1) We pay an annual cash retainer to our Non-Executive Chair of the Board. We do not pay any other cash compensation to him or her for service on our Board of Directors. The Non-Executive Chair also receives an annual equity award, similar to the other non-employee directors.

<sup>(2)</sup> On June 28, 2018, we granted a restricted stock award of 1,952 shares, having a value of \$95,004 on the date of grant that vests over three years in equal annual installments on the anniversaries of the award to each of our non-employee directors who was serving on our Board the date of the 2018 Annual Meeting of Shareholders and whose term continued after our 2018 Annual Meeting of Shareholders. In addition, Messrs. Parker and Pompa, who joined our Board during fiscal 2019, each received a restricted stock award on the day they joined our Board.

### Restricted Stock Awards and Restricted Stock Unit Awards

Restricted stock awards to non-employee directors are issued pursuant to our 2009 Non-Employee Director Stock Incentive Plan, as amended (2014) (the "Director Stock Plan"). Each non-employee director receives a restricted stock award on the date he or she is first elected to our Board and annually on the date of our annual meeting of shareholders if his or her term continues after such meeting. The number of shares of restricted stock subject to the award is determined by our Board of Directors, after recommendation by our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee and in consideration of various factors, including market data and trends. We target the equity-based compensation received by non-employee directors at approximately the 50th percentile of our peer group of companies. Restricted stock awards vest in three equal annual installments over a three-year vesting period. Upon issuance of the restricted stock, each holder is entitled to the rights of a shareholder, including the right to vote the shares of restricted stock and receive any cash dividends and any other distributions.

Non-employee directors have the option to defer receipt of all or a portion of any restricted stock award and will receive a restricted stock unit award for that portion of the restricted stock award deferred. Restricted stock unit awards are also issued pursuant to our Director Stock Plan. Each non-employee director electing to receive a restricted stock unit award in lieu of a restricted stock award receives a credit of shares of our common stock in an amount equal to the number of shares he or she has elected to defer. The account is also credited, as of the crediting date, with an amount equal to the dividend paid on one share of our common stock multiplied by the number of shares credited to each account. Non-employee directors receiving restricted stock unit awards may elect to receive the amounts credited to their account at a fixed date, at age 70, or following death or retirement from our Board of Directors. The restricted stock unit awards and related accumulated dividends are paid out in the form of shares of our common stock (plus cash in lieu of fractional shares) either in a lump sum or in installments, at the participating director's election. This is an unfunded book-entry, "phantom stock unit" plan, as no trust or other vehicle has been established to hold any shares of our common stock.

# Director Deferred Compensation Plan

Our Deferred Compensation Plan for Non-Employee Directors (the "Director Deferred Compensation Plan") was adopted by our Board of Directors to encourage our non-employee directors to increase their ownership of shares of our common stock, thereby aligning their interests in the long-term success of Apogee with that of our other shareholders. Under the plan, participants may

elect to defer all or a portion of their annual cash retainer into deferred stock accounts. There is no Company match on amounts deferred by our nonemployee directors under such plan. Each participating director receives a credit of shares of our common stock in an amount equal to the amount of annual cash retainer deferred divided by the fair market value of one share of our common stock as of the crediting date. These accounts also are credited, as of the crediting date, with an amount equal to the dividend paid on one share of our common stock multiplied by the number of shares credited to each account. Participating directors may elect to receive the amounts credited to their accounts at a fixed date, at age 70, or following death or retirement from our Board of Directors. The deferred amounts are paid out in the form of shares of our common stock (plus cash in lieu of fractional shares) either in a lump sum or in installments, at the participating director's election. This plan is an unfunded, book-entry, "phantom stock unit" plan, as no trust or other vehicle has been established to hold any shares of our common stock.

### Charitable Matching Contributions Program for Non-Employee Directors

Under our Charitable Matching Contributions Program for Non-Employee Directors, we match cash or publicly-traded stock contributions made by our non-employee directors to charitable organizations that are exempt from federal income tax up to a maximum aggregate amount of \$2,000 per eligible non-employee director per calendar year.

# Stock Ownership Guidelines for Non-Employee Directors

Our Board of Directors believes that non-employee directors should have a significant equity interest in Apogee and established voluntary stock ownership guidelines for directors in 2002. The guidelines encourage share ownership by our directors in an amount having a market value of \$180,000 (three times the current annual Board retainer of \$60,000) to be achieved within five years of first being elected as a director. In calculating share ownership of our non-employee directors, we include shares of restricted stock and restricted stock units issued pursuant to our Director Stock Plan, and phantom stock units issued pursuant to our Director Deferred Compensation Plan, but do not include unexercised stock options. Shares are valued based on the average closing price of our common stock for the most recently completed fiscal year. As of March 1, 2019, the last trading day of fiscal 2019, all of our non-employee directors exceeded our stock ownership guidelines, except for Mr. L. Johnson, who joined our Board on June 22, 2017, and Mr. Pompa who joined our Board on October 2, 2018. Both Messrs. L. Johnson and Pompa are currently on pace to meet our guidelines within five years of election to our Board.

### Fiscal 2019 Non-Employee Director Compensation Table

The following table presents the compensation paid to our non-employee directors for fiscal 2019.

| Name                 | Fees Earned or Paid in<br>Cash (\$) (1) | Stock Awards (\$) (2) | All Other Compensation (\$) | Total (\$) |
|----------------------|---|-----------------------|-----------------------------|------------|
| Bernard P. Aldrich   | 135,000                                 | 95,004                | 35,955                      | 265,959    |
| Jerome L. Davis      | 85,000                                  | 95,004                | 17,505                      | 197,509    |
| Sara L. Hays         | 80,000                                  | 95,004                | 18,583                      | 193,587    |
| Lloyd E. Johnson     | 85,000                                  | 95,004                | 3,794                       | 183,798    |
| John T. Manning (4)  | 28,334                                  | _                     | 551                         | 28,885     |
| Robert J. Marzec (4) | 29,750                                  | _                     | 13,667                      | 43,417     |
| Donald A. Nolan      | 81,667                                  | 95,004                | 11,617                      | 188,288    |
| Herbert K. Parker    | 66,667                                  | 110,838 (5            | 3,201                       | 180,706    |
| Mark A. Pompa        | 31,250                                  | 71,233 6              | 492                         | 102,975    |
| Richard V. Reynolds  | 85,000                                  | 95,004                | 22,496                      | 202,500    |
| Patricia K. Wagner   | 85,000                                  | 95,004                | 2,486                       | 182,490    |

<sup>(</sup>i) Includes eash retainers deferred by non-employee directors under our Director Deferred Compensation Plan, as further described under the heading "Director Deferred Compensation Plan". During fiscal 2019, Messrs. Davis, Marzec, Nolan and Pompa made deferrals of all or a portion of their annual cash retainers pursuant to our Director Deferred Compensation Plan.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>©</sup> The amounts in this column are calculated based on the fair market value of our common stock on the date the award was made in accordance with Financial Accounting Standards Board Accounting Standards Codification Topic 718 ("FASB ASC Topic 718"). On June 28, 2018, each of our non-employee directors whose term continued after our 2018 Annual Meeting of Shareholders received a restricted stock award or, if a director elected to defer received all or a portion of his or her restricted stock award, a restricted stock unit award of 1,952 shares. The closing price of our common stock on the NASDAQ Global Select Market on June 28, 2018, the date of grant, was \$48.67. The table below sets forth certain information with respect to the aggregate number of shares of unvested restricted stock, restricted stock units, including shares from dividends credited to the account, and vested options to purchase shares of our common stock held by our non-employee directors as of March 2, 2019, the end of fiscal 2019. Our non-employee directors did not hold any stock options as of March 2, 2019.

| Sara L. Hays     3,761       Lloyd E. Johnson     1,147     1,9       John T. Manning     —       Robert J. Marzec     —     7,1       Donald A. Nolan     —     7,1       Herbert K. Parker     2,330   | Name                | Aggregate Number of Shares of<br>Restricted Stock (#) | Aggregate Number of Shares of Deferred<br>Restricted Stock Units (#) |  |  |
|--|---------------------|---|--|--|--|
| Sara L. Hays         3,761           Lloyd E. Johnson         1,147         1,9           John T. Manning         —         —           Robert J. Marzec         —         —           Donald A. Nolan         —         7,1           Herbert K. Parker         2,330 | Bernard P. Aldrich  | 3,761   | _  |  |  |
| Lloyd E. Johnson     1,147     1,9       John T. Manning     —       Robert J. Marzec     —     7,1       Donald A. Nolan     —     7,1       Herbert K. Parker     2,330  | Jerome L. Davis     | _   | 7,198  |  |  |
| John T. Manning         —           Robert J. Marzec         —           Donald A. Nolan         —         7,1           Herbert K. Parker         2,330   | Sara L. Hays        | 3,761   | _  |  |  |
| Robert J. Marzee         —           Donald A. Nolan         —         7,1           Herbert K. Parker         2,330   | Lloyd E. Johnson    | 1,147   | 1,969  |  |  |
| Donald A. Nolan         —         7,1           Herbert K. Parker         2,330  | John T. Manning     | _   | _  |  |  |
| Herbert K. Parker 2,330  | Robert J. Marzec    | _   | _  |  |  |
| <del>-</del> ,,,,,   | Donald A. Nolan     | _   | 7,198  |  |  |
|  | Herbert K. Parker   | 2,330   | _  |  |  |
| Mark A. Pompa — 1,7  | Mark A. Pompa       | _   | 1,768  |  |  |
| Richard V. Reynolds — 7,1  | Richard V. Reynolds | _   | 7,198  |  |  |
| Patricia K. Wagner 3,761   | Patricia K. Wagner  | 3,761   | _  |  |  |

<sup>(0)</sup>This column includes dividends and dividend equivalents paid on shares of restricted stock and restricted stock unit awards, respectively, issued pursuant to our Director Stock Plan, dividend equivalents paid on phantom stock units pursuant to our Director Deferred Compensation Plan and matching contributions pursuant to our Charitable Matching Contributions Program for Non-Employee Directors. The table below sets forth the amounts contributed or paid by the Company for our non-employee directors pursuant to such plans with respect to fiscal 2019.

| Name                | Dividends Paid on<br>Shares of Restricted<br>Stock (\$) | Dividend Equivalents Paid on Shares of Deferred Restricted Stock Units (\$) | Dividend Equivalents<br>Paid on Phantom<br>Stock Units (\$) | Matching Contributions<br>under our Charitable<br>Matching Contributions<br>Program for<br>Non-Employee Directors<br>(S) | Total All Other<br>Compensation (\$) |
|---------------------|---|---|---|--|--------------------------------------|
| Bernard P. Aldrich  | 2,394   | _   | 31,561  | 2,000  | 35,955                               |
| Jerome L. Davis     | _   | 4,324   | 11,181  | 2,000  | 17,505                               |
| Sara L. Hays        | 2,394   | _   | 14,189  | 2,000  | 18,583                               |
| Lloyd E. Johnson    | 833   | 961   | _   | 2,000  | 3,794                                |
| John T. Manning     | 551   | _   | _   | _  | 551                                  |
| Robert J. Marzec    | 551   | _   | 11,116  | 2,000  | 13,667                               |
| Donald A. Nolan     | _   | 4,324   | 5,293   | 2,000  | 11,617                               |
| Herbert K. Parker   | 1,201   | _   | _   | 2,000  | 3,201                                |
| Mark A. Pompa       | _   | 309   | 183   | _  | 492                                  |
| Richard V. Reynolds | _   | 4,324   | 16,172  | 2,000  | 22,496                               |
| Patricia K. Wagner  | 2,486   | _   | _   | _  | 2,486                                |

<sup>(4)</sup> Messrs. Manning and Marzec retired from our Board on June 28, 2018.

(6) Mr. Pompa was elected to our Board on October 2, 2018. He received a restricted stock award for 1,768 shares on October 2, 2018. The closing price of our common stock on the NASDAQ Market on October 2, 2018, the date of grant, was \$40.29.

## EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION

## Compensation Committee Report

The Compensation Committee has reviewed and discussed the following Compensation Discussion and Analysis section with management and the Committee's independent compensation consultant and has recommended to the Board of Directors that the Compensation Discussion and Analysis be included as follows in our Annual Report on Form 10-K.

Compensation Committee of the Board of Directors of Apogee Jerome L. Davis, Chair Sara L. Hays Donald A. Nolan Patricia K. Wagner

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>5)</sup> Mr. Parker was elected to our Board on April 26, 2018. He received a restricted stock award for 378 shares on April 26, 2018. The closing price of our common stock on the NASDAQ Market on April 26, 2018, the date of grant, was \$41.89. Mr. Parker also received a restricted stock award for 1,952 shares on June 28, 2018, the date of our 2018 Annual Meeting.

### Compensation Discussion and Analysis

This Compensation Discussion and Analysis describes Apogee's executive compensation program for fiscal 2019, and certain elements of the fiscal 2020 program. In particular, this section explains how our Compensation Committee (the "Committee") made decisions related to compensation for our executives, including our Named Executive Officers listed in Item 10, for fiscal 2019.

### Executive Summary About Apogee

Our Company is a world leader in the design and development of value-added glass solutions for enclosing commercial buildings and value-added glass and acrylic for picture framing and displays. We have four segments, with manufacturing and fabrication located in the U.S., Canada and Brazil. For fiscal 2019, we had revenue of approximately \$1.4 billion. See Item 1. Business for more information about our Company and its four segments.

### Strategy

Our strategies are to diversify revenue streams within the commercial construction industry and structure the business to provide more stable revenue growth and profit generation over an economic cycle. Strategies are focused on diversification of end sectors served through growth from new geographies, new products and new markets, while improving margins through productivity and project selection initiatives. See Item 1. Business for information on our strategies.

### Our Fiscal 2019 Performance

For fiscal 2019, our Company achieved record revenues of approximately \$1.4 billion, an increase of 6% over the prior year, and had earnings per diluted share ("EPS") of \$1.63 and adjusted earnings per diluted share of \$3.01. See Item 7. Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations and Item 8. Financial Statements and Supplementary Data for more information on our Company's performance during fiscal 2019.

## **Executive Compensation Philosophy and Practices**

Our compensation programs are designed to attract, motivate and retain executive talent to achieve success in both the short- and long-term for our Company; pay for sustainable performance in an ever-changing environment; and align the interests of our executive officers with our shareholders. We continue to refine our executive compensation program to reflect changes in our business strategy and evolving executive compensation practices.

### Our Executive Compensation Practices (What We Do):

We seek alignment of pay and performance each year. A significant portion of our compensation program is performance-based through the use of our short-term and longterm incentive plans.

We review "tally sheets" and realizable pay and performance for our Named Executive Officers and use that information as a factor in making compensation decisions.

We mitigate undue compensation risk by utilizing caps on potential payments, multiple financial performance metrics, and different metrics for our annual cash incentives and long-term performance awards, as well as having robust Board and Board Committee processes to identify and manage risk.

We have change-in-control severance agreements with all of our Named Executive Officers that provide benefits only upon a "double trigger."

Our equity award agreements for grants made pursuant to our Stock Incentive Plan have "double trigger" change-in-control provisions for all employees.

We provide minimal perquisites to our executives.

We have adopted stringent share ownership guidelines, and we review compliance annually.

We evaluate share utilization by annually reviewing overhang and burn rates.

The Committee benefits from its utilization of a compensation consulting firm that fully meets the stringent independence requirements under the final rules of the Dodd-Frank Act.

We have a clawback policy that applies to our Named Executive Officers and certain other executives.

We have a formal hedging policy that prohibits all employees and directors from engaging in hedging transactions in our Company's securities.

### Executive Compensation Practices We Have Not Implemented or Have Discontinued (What We Don't Do):

We do not have employment contracts for our Named Executive Officers.

We do not pay annual incentive compensation if our Company is not profitable for the

We do not believe any of our Company's compensation programs create risks that are reasonably likely to have a material adverse effect on our Company.

We do not provide for excise tax "gross-ups" or "single triggers" in our change-in-

We do not provide tax reimbursement or tax "gross-ups" on any perquisites.

We do not provide automobile allowances or pay for club memberships for our Named Executive Officers.

We do not reprice underwater stock options or stock appreciation rights.

The Committee's compensation consulting firm does not provide any other services to our Company other than those requested by our Compensation Committee for executive compensation.

The Committee's independent compensation consulting firm does not provide any specific recommendations for compensation for our Named Executive Officers.

## The Role of Shareholder Vote on Say on Pay Proposal

Our Company provides our shareholders with the opportunity to cast an advisory vote on our Say on Pay Proposal annually. At our Company's annual meeting of shareholders held on June 28, 2018, 95% of the votes cast on the Say on Pay Proposal were voted in favor of ratification of the proposal. Management met with certain investors during fiscal 2019 to discuss operations, experations, compensation and corporate governance matters. The Committee did not make any changes to its programs in response to this vote or based on interactions with our shareholders. The Committee will continue to take into account the outcome of our Company's Say on Pay Proposal and input from our shareholders when making future compensation decisions.

### **Our Executive Compensation Program**

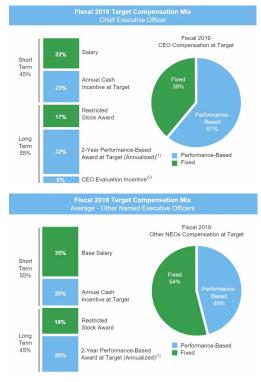
Total compensation includes a mix of short-term and long-term compensation and fixed and performance-based compensation.

- Short-term compensation
  - Base salary
- Annual performance-based cash incentives
- Long-term compensation
  - Restricted stock award (40%)
    - The number of time-based restricted stock awards granted to an executive in any given year is based on market compensation data as well
      as individual performance in the prior year.
  - Cash-based performance awards (60%)
    - Two-year performance-based awards on end-to-end cycles that are only earned upon achievement of certain two-year financial performance measures with any amounts earned paid over two-years. These awards are granted every other year and settled in cash.

- Our Chief Executive Officer also participates in a performance-based evaluation incentive program that encourages him to drive continued
  growth, operational improvement and successful implementation of our strategic plan and to remain with our Company. Amounts earned by our
  Chief Executive Officer pursuant to this program are mandatorily deferred pursuant to our Deferred Compensation Plan.
- We believe a two-year performance period for 60% of our long-term incentive awards is more appropriate for our Company due to the cyclical nature of the commercial construction industry, variability of project execution schedules as determined by our customers, and limited visibility to industry conditions and revenues more than two years out. In addition, we believe the end-to-end cycles of the awards compensate for having only two-year performance periods instead of three-year performance periods used by many other public companies. Our Compensation Committee regularly reviews and considers the appropriate performance period for our long-term performance-based awards.

### Target Compensation Mix

The charts below illustrate the short-term and long-term mix, and fixed and performance-based mix of the primary compensation elements at target for our Chief Executive Officer and Other Named Executive Officers. This information is used by the Committee as a guideline in making compensation awards for our Named Executive Officers.



(1) Our two-year performance-based awards have end-to-end performance cycles, are granted every other year and are cash-settled. During fiscal 2019, we granted the opportunity to earn the fiscal 2019 - 2020 performance-based awards to all our Named Executive Officers. We will not make any two-year performance-based awards to our Named Executive Officers until fiscal 2021, after the completion of the current fiscal 2019 - 2020 award cycle. We have included the annualized (50%) value of such awards at target in the charts above. These awards are a component of long-term compensation for both years in the performance cycle.

(2) During fiscal 2019, we granted the fiscal 2019 CEO evaluation incentive, which has a one-year performance period. All of the fiscal 2019 CEO evaluation incentive is included at target in the chart above.

### Highlights of Fiscal 2019 Compensation Actions

The following highlights the Committee's key compensation decisions for fiscal 2019. These decisions were made after reviewing compensation data provided by the Committee's independent compensation consultant.

- Base Salaries. For fiscal 2019, the Committee did not award any base salary increases to our Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer or General Counsel but awarded a base salary increase of 5.1% to our Senior Vice President and Treasurer.
- Annual Cash Incentive Payouts. Our fiscal 2019 annual cash incentives paid out at an average of 35.2% of target. Our Chief Executive Officer eamed an annual cash incentive equal to 37.0% of his fiscal 2019 base salary, and our Other Named Executive Officers eamed fiscal 2019 annual cash incentives ranging from 14.1% to 26.4% of their fiscal 2019 base salaries. The financial performance metrics for these awards were net sales, eamings before taxes ("EBT") and days working capital ("DWC").
   Restricted Stock Awards. On April 26, 2018, the Committee awarded restricted stock awards to our Named Executive Officers that vest over three
- Restricted Stock Awards. On April 26, 2018, the Committee awarded restricted stock awards to our Named Executive Officers that vest over three
  years. Our Chief Executive Officer received an award valued at \$727,420 and our Other Named Executive Officers received awards with values
  ranging from \$102,631 to \$258,300.
- Fiscal 2019 2020 Performance-Based Awards. On June 28, 2018, the Committee established the fiscal 2019 2020 cash-based performance awards to our Named Executive Officers. Our Chief Executive Officer received an award with a value of \$2,711,500 at target and our Other Named Executive Officers received awards with values ranging from \$233,100 to \$783,000 at target. These awards are end-to-end awards and will only be granted every other year. Our Company will not award additional two-year cash-based performance awards until completion of the current fiscal 2019 2020 award cycle. The financial performance metrics for these awards are cumulative net sales, cumulative EPS and average return on invested capital ("ROIC").
- Chief Executive Officer Evaluation Incentive. Our Chief Executive Officer earned \$198,688 under the fiscal 2019 CEO evaluation incentive awards, which was mandatorily deferred pursuant to our Deferred Compensation Plan.

## Overview of Primary Compensation Elements

The table below provides an overview of the three primary compensation elements used in our executive compensation program.

| Compensation Element   | Objective   | How Determined   | Market Positioning(1)   | How Impacted by<br>Performance  |
|--|---|--|---|---|
| Base Salary and Benefits   | Attract and retain executive officers through competitive pay and benefit programs.   | Individual performance,<br>experience, tenure, competitive<br>market data and executive<br>potential.  | Targeted to be around the 50th percentile relative to competitive market practices.   | Based on individual performance.  |
| Annual Cash Incentive<br>Compensation  | Create an incentive for achievement of pre-defined annual Company performance results.  | For target bonus award opportunity percentages - competitive market data and trends, and internal equity.  For actual bonus payouts - performance against preestablished criteria in our annual cash incentive plan. | Our overall performance results will yield total cash compensation levels as follows:  - Below target performance: total cash at or below the 25th percentile.  - Target performance: total cash slightly below the 50th percentile.  - Above target performance: total cash above the 50th percentile. | Payout dependent on achievement of one-year Company financial performance goals.  |
| Long-Term Incentive<br>Compensation:<br>- Restricted Stock<br>(40% awarded<br>annually)<br>- Two-Y ear<br>Performance-Based<br>Awards (60%<br>awarded every other<br>year) | Align the interests of executives with shareholders and to focus on long-term sustained performance, entrepreneurial style and quality products and services while creating appropriate retention incentives through the use of multi-year vesting schedules. | Individual performance, company performance, market data and trends, internal equity and executive potential.  New hire, promotion and special awards. Internal equity and market data and trends.                   | Targeted generally to be at or<br>slightly above the 50th percentile for<br>target performance and up to the<br>75th percentile for maximum<br>performance.   | Performance that increases our stock price increases the value of the restricted stock awards.  Cash payout of the two-year performance-based awards is dependent on achievement of two-year Company financial performance goals. |

<sup>(1)</sup> Actual pay levels may be above or below the targeted level depending on all of the factors outlined in the "How Determined" column above.

### Compensation Process

Our compensation program is evaluated annually taking into consideration changes to our business strategy, the economy and our competitive marketplace, as well as evolving executive compensation practices

During the first quarter of each fiscal year, the performance of each of our Named Executive Officers is evaluated based on a subjective assessment of (i) his or her executive leadership; and (ii) achievement of agreed-upon individual business objectives for the just-completed fiscal year. The annual performance evaluation of our Chief Executive Officer is administered by our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee, with all non-employee directors participating in the performance evaluation, and the results of the Chief Executive Officer's annual performance evaluation are reviewed by the Committee and our full Board. Our Chief Executive Officer conducts or participates in the annual performance evaluation of our Other Named Executive Officers and reviews the results with members of the Committee.

In establishing the elements and levels of compensation for a fiscal year, the Committee considers the annual performance evaluations of our Named Executive Officers and reviews its compensation consultant's independent analyses of market compensation levels based on comparable positions, using both published survey sources and company peer group data to determine our competitive positioning relative to the market. Our Chief Executive Officer makes recommendations to the Committee on compensation for our Other Named Executive Officers, but does not participate in the determination of his own compensation

The Committee continuously monitors our compensation programs and annually reviews a compensation "tally sheet," which lists total direct compensation (base salary, annual cash incentive compensation, and long-term incentive awards) perquisites, other elements of executive compensation, broad-based employee benefits and wealth accumulation through Company equity and retirement plans for our Named Executive Officers; however, the compensation tally sheets are not used to make actual pay decisions. The Committee assesses historical pay and performance to ensure continued alignment of our compensation programs. However, the Committee generally does not consider compensation eamed in prior years in establishing the elements and levels of compensation for a Named Executive Officer in the current fiscal year.

## Consulting Assistance, Peer Group and Competitive Market

Compensation Consultant Independence. In fiscal 2019, the Committee retained the services of Pearl Meyer to assist with the review of overall compensation for our executive officers. Pearl Meyer reports directly to the Committee, and the Committee can replace Pearl Meyer or hire additional consultants at any time. During fiscal 2019, Pearl Meyer attended five Committee meetings in person or by telephone, including executive sessions, as requested, and consulted with the Chair of the Committee between meetings.

As required under the Dodd-Frank Act, the Committee has analyzed whether the work of Pearl Meyer as its compensation consultant raises any conflict of interest, taking into consideration the following factors under this rule: (i) Pearl Meyer does not provide any other services to our Company; (ii) the amount of fees from our Company paid to Pearl Meyer is less than 1% of Pearl Meyer's total revenue; (iii) Pearl Meyer's policies and procedures were designed to ensure independence; (iv) Pearl Meyer does not have any business or personal relationship with an executive officer of our Company or any member of the Committee; and (v) neither Pearl Meyer, nor any member of its consulting team, owns any stock of our Company. The Committee has determined, based on its analysis of the above factors, that Pearl Meyer is independent of our Company and the work of Pearl Meyer (and the individual compensation advisors employed by Pearl Meyer) as compensation consultant to the Committee has not created any conflict of interest. The Committee will continue to monitor the independence of its compensation consultant on an annual basis.

Peer Group. The selection criteria identified for determining and reviewing our Company's peer group generally include:

- Companies with revenue within a similar range (0.33 to 3.0 multiple).
- Companies with market capitalization within a similar range (0.33 to 3.0 multiple).
- Companies with market capitalization to revenue ratio of 0.5 or greater.
- Companies in the same or similar industries.
  Companies with business model similarity, which may include the following:
  - Coatings for special purposes (e.g., protective, UV, etc.);
  - Construction materials, primarily for commercial or industrial applications;
  - Specialized/customized product lines:
  - Heavy-duty manufacturing operations and project-directed manufacturing; and
  - Project-based businesses.
- Companies in the same geographic location (to a lesser degree).

  Companies included in the prior-year peer group, to help ensure year-over-year consistency (where appropriate).

Our 15-company peer group is listed below.

| Aegion Corporation         | H.B. Fuller Company                  |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| AZZ Inc.                   | LCI Industries                       |
| BMC Stock Holdings, Inc.   | Masonite International Corporation   |
| Eagle Materials Inc.       | NCI Building Systems, Inc.           |
| EnPro Industries, Inc.     | Quaker Chemical Corporation          |
| Gibralter Industries, Inc. | Quanex Building Products Corporation |
| Graco Inc.                 | Tennant Company                      |
| Griffon Corporation        |                                      |

Competitive Market. The Committee relies on its independent compensation consultant to help define the appropriate competitive market using a combination of the peer group companies and published compensation surveys. The information on the competitive market is used by the Committee:

- As an input in designing our compensation plans and philosophy;
- As an input in developing base salary adjustments, annual cash incentive targets and long-term incentive ranges;
- To benchmark the form and mix of long-term awards;
- To assess the competitiveness of total direct compensation awarded to our Named Executive Officers and certain of our other executives; and
- To benchmark dilution and overhang levels (dilutive impact on our shareholders of equity compensation) and annual burn rate (the aggregate shares awarded as a percentage of total outstanding shares).

# Fiscal 2019 Individual Compensation Actions

Fiscal 2019 Annual Performance Accomplishments. The performance during fiscal 2019 of each of our Named Executive Officers was evaluated based on a subjective assessment of (i) his or her executive leadership; and (ii) achievement against his or her individual business objectives for fiscal 2019. Below is certain information regarding each Named Executive Officer's key achievements during fiscal 2019.

- Mr. Puishys. Mr. Puishys key accomplishments during fiscal 2019 include:
  - Achieved revenues of \$1.4 billion, a 6% increase over the prior year.
  - Returned approximately \$61 million directly to shareholders through a combination of dividends and share repurchases.

  - Led talent management and leadership transitions at four business units and three key functional positions at Apogee.

    Made strategic growth investments in our Architectural Glass segment to expand segment's participation in new U.S. non-residential fabricated glass markets positioning the segment for sales commencing during fiscal 2020.
  - Advanced synergies resulting in increased cross-selling of finished products and intercompany supply and positioning our Company for
  - improved performance.

    Made capital investments for facility improvements and equipment to position our Company for productivity and operating margin
  - Advanced the integration of EFCO Corporation, acquired during fiscal 2018, through new leadership in key roles and continued implementation of Apogee Lean Enterprise positioning EFCO for productivity and operating margin improvements.
- Mr. Porter. Mr. Porter's key accomplishments during fiscal 2019 include:
   Achieved revenues of \$1.4 billion, a 6% increase over the prior year.
   Achieved operating margin of 4.3% and adjusted operating margin of 8.3%.
  - Achieved EPS of \$1.63 and adjusted EPS of \$3.01.
  - Performed a capital structure analysis that led to \$61 million being directly returned to shareholders through a combination of dividends and share repurchases.
  - Provided direct management oversight to two Architectural Framing System segment business units to support leadership transitions and performance improvement; both business units had double digit revenue growth and margin improvement for the year.

- Achieved \$50 million in orders from our building retrofit program and expanded our building retrofit program with additional staffing and capabilities.
- Provided support for a growth strategy to expand the Architectural Glass segment's participation in new U.S. non-residential fabricated glass markets positioning the segment for sales commencing during fiscal 2020.
- Ms. Beithon. Ms. Beithon's key accomplishments during fiscal 2019 include:
  - Led corporate governance initiatives leading to certain amendments to our Company's by-laws, proposed amendments to our Company's articles of incorporation and amendments to our corporate governance guidelines
  - Managed and resolved various claims and litigation matters.
  - Provided legal support for growth strategies and business development activities.
  - Provided legal and environmental support for new real estate holdings and leases.
  - Provided legal support for the integration of EFCO Corporation and other post-acquisition matters. Led Section 16 officer reporting compliance efforts, resulting in no late filings during fiscal 2019.
- Mr. Jewell. Mr. Jewell's key accomplishments during fiscal 2019 include:

  - Led a robust three-year strategic planning process for our Company and its four segments.

    Advanced synergies resulting in increased intercompany material supply, cross-selling of finished product, facility utilization and collaboration among the business units across segments.
  - Improved market and economic outlook analysis and reporting.
  - Conducted an analysis of optimal long-term segment strategies and requirements. Evaluated various business development initiatives and opportunities.

  - Conducted a preliminary portfolio alignment analysis.
- Mr. Johnson. Mr. Johnson's key accomplishments during fiscal 2019 include:
  - Managed our real estate holdings and leases, including the sale of a former fabrication facility resulting in sales proceeds of \$10 million.
  - Obtained government incentives related to facility capital improvements resulting in fiscal 2019 cash benefits of more than \$8 million. Led tax planning initiatives that resulted in an effective tax rate of 22.1% for fiscal 2019.

  - Managed the repurchase of shares of our common stock that resulted in the return of \$43 million directly to our shareholders.
  - Negotiated appropriate levels of insurance coverage for fiscal 2019 at competitive rates and improved terms with quality carriers.

Base Salary. Base salary reflects a fixed portion of the overall compensation package and is the base amount from which certain other compensation elements are determined. In making salary adjustments, the Committee considers the executive's base salary relative to the market, our compensation philosophy and other factors, such as individual performance against business plans, leadership, initiatives, experience, knowledge and job criticality. After discussing these items, the Committee decided it was appropriate to provide merit increases to all of our Named Executive Officers for fiscal 2020, except Mr. Puishys.

The table below provides information on the base salaries of our Named Executive Officers for fiscal 2019 and fiscal 2020.

### Base Salary

| Name                | Fiscal 2019<br>Base Salary (\$) | Increase in Fiscal 2019<br>(%) | Fiscal 2020<br>Base Salary (\$) | Increase in Fiscal 2020<br>(%) |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Joseph F. Puishys   | 935,000                         | _                              | 935,000                         | _                              |
| James S. Porter     | 435,000                         | _                              | 448,000                         | 3.0                            |
| Patricia A. Beithon | 360,000                         | _                              | 371,000                         | 3.1                            |
| Brent C. Jewell     | 350,000                         | N/A                            | 361,000                         | 3.1                            |
| Gary R. Johnson     | 259,000                         | 5.1                            | 269,000                         | 3.9                            |

Annual Cash Incentive Compensation. Annual cash incentive awards are designed to reward short-term performance results. These results are based on achievement relative to objective financial goals set forth in the annual operating plan approved by our Board of Directors. For fiscal 2019, annual cash incentive awards to our Named Executive Officers other than Mr. Jewell were

made pursuant to our shareholder-approved Apogee Enterprises, Inc. Executive Management Incentive Plan (the "Executive MIP"), as described below. The Executive MIP was approved by shareholders in fiscal 2016.

Executive MIP. Our Executive MIP was designed to be an annual bonus "pool" plan. Each fiscal year, the Committee establishes a bonus pool equal to a percentage of one or more performance factors from a list of approved factors set forth in our Executive MIP. If the bonus pool generated for any fiscal year is not sufficient to fund all potential payouts to participants under the plan, the awards earned by each participant will be reduced proportionately based on each participant's percent of the pool.

Each fiscal year, the Committee selects the executives of our Company who will participate in our executive management incentive plan for that year and assigns a percentage of the bonus pool to each participating executive, with the total percentage not to exceed 100% of the bonus pool for any given fiscal year. The percentage of the bonus pool assigned to each participating executive establishes the maximum annual cash incentive award payout for that individual participant for the current fiscal year; however, no one individual payout under the Executive MIP can exceed \$3,000,000 in any given fiscal year.

The actual annual cash incentive awards to be paid to participants after the annual bonus pool has been established may be adjusted downward based on the achievement of one or more additional predetermined, objective performance goals based on the annual operating plan approved by our Board of Directors. At least one of the additional predetermined, objective performance goals must be met at the threshold level in order for any annual cash incentive to be paid to an executive. In addition, if our Company is not profitable, no annual cash incentives will be paid even if the other goals are at or above threshold.

Generally, if the threshold performance level for all performance goals is achieved, 50% or less of the target award will be earned; if target performance level for all performance goals is achieved, 100% of the target award will be earned; and if maximum performance level for all performance goals is achieved, 200% of the target award will be earned. If the threshold performance level for only one performance goal is achieved and the threshold performance is not achieved for any of the other performance goals, less than 50% of the target award will be earned based on the weighting allocated to that specific performance goal. For any performance between these levels, awards will be interpolated. The Committee has the discretion to further reduce payouts under our Executive MIP, as appropriate.

Fiscal 2019 Annual Cash Incentive Payouts. The performance factor used to establish the fiscal 2019 bonus pool under our Executive MIP was 5% of Apogee's operating income. In fiscal 2019, we had operating income of \$67,284,000, generating a bonus pool of \$3,364,200.

The table below sets forth certain information with respect to the fiscal 2019 annual cash incentive award payout ranges as a percentage of fiscal 2019 salary for our Named Executive Officers.

## Fiscal 2019 Annual Cash Incentive Compensation Ranges

| Name                | Threshold Payout as a Percentage of Fiscal 2019 Salary (%) (1) | Target Payout as a Percentage of Fiscal 2019 Salary (%) (2) | Maximum Payout as a Percentage of Fiscal 2019 Salary (%) (3) |
|---------------------|--|---|--|
| Joseph F. Puishys   | 5.25   | 105.00  | 210.00   |
| James S. Porter     | 3.75   | 75.00   | 150.00   |
| Patricia A. Beithon | 3.00   | 60.00   | 120.00   |
| Brent C. Jewell     | 2.25   | 45.00   | 90.00  |
| Gary R. Johnson     | 2.00   | 40.00   | 80.00  |

<sup>(1)</sup> Assumes threshold performance level is achieved for only the performance goal with the lowest weighting and is not achieved for any other performance goals. If actual results are below threshold performance level for all performance goals, the payout will be zero.

The following table outlines the performance goal, weighting and actual performance achievement for the fiscal 2019 performance cycle.

<sup>(2)</sup> Assumes target performance level is achieved for all performance goals.

<sup>(3)</sup> Assumes maximum performance level is achieved or exceeded for all performance goals.

# Fiscal 2019 Annual Cash Incentive Performance Levels and Actual Performance

|                  | Weight |                     |                     |                     |    |                   | % Performance |
|------------------|--------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|----|-------------------|---------------|
| Performance Goal | (%)    | Threshold           | Target              | Maximum             | A  | ctual Performance | Achieved (%)  |
| Net Sales        | 25.0   | \$<br>1,388,500,000 | \$<br>1,453,991,000 | \$<br>1,518,001,000 | \$ | 1,402,637,000     | 60.77         |
| EBT              | 65.0   | \$<br>107,201,000   | \$<br>123,056,000   | \$<br>137,016,000   | \$ | 58,662,000        | _             |
| DWC              | 10.0   | 57.2 days           | 54.9 days           | 52.9 days           |    | 52.8 days         | 200.00        |

The following table sets forth certain information with respect to the fiscal 2019 annual cash incentive compensation payouts for each of our Named Executive Officers.

# Fiscal 2019 Annual Cash Incentive Compensation Payouts

| Performanc          | e Goals       | Potentia   | l Payout            | Actual Payout               |                       |                                    |   |
|---------------------|---------------|--|---------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------|---|
| Name and Metric     | Weighting (%) | Target Payout as a<br>Percent of Fiscal<br>2019 Salary (%) | Target Payout Level | Percentage of<br>Target (%) | Guideline Amount (\$) | Approved Payout<br>Amount (\$) (1) | Percent of<br>Fiscal 2019<br>Salary (%) |
| Joseph F. Puishys   |               |  |                     |                             |                       |                                    |   |
| Net Sales           | 25            | 26.25  | 245,437             | 60.77                       | 149,226               | 149,226                            | 15.96                                   |
| EBT                 | 65            | 68.25  | 638,138             | _                           | _                     | _                                  | _                                       |
| DWC                 | 10            | 10.50  | 98,175              | 200.00                      | 196,350               | 196,350                            | 21.00                                   |
|                     | 100           | 105.00   | 981,750             | 35.20                       | 345,576               | 345,576                            | 36.96                                   |
| James S. Porter     |               |  |                     |                             |                       |                                    |   |
| Net Sales           | 25            | 18.75  | 81,562              | 60.77                       | 49,590                | 49,590                             | 11.40                                   |
| EBT                 | 65            | 48.75  | 212,063             | _                           | _                     | _                                  | _                                       |
| DWC                 | 10            | 7.50   | 32,625              | 200.00                      | 65,250                | 65,250                             | 15.00                                   |
|                     | 100           | 75.00  | 326,250             | 35.20                       | 114,840               | 114,840                            | 26.40                                   |
| Patricia A. Beithon |               |  |                     |                             |                       |                                    |   |
| Net Sales           | 25            | 15.00  | 54,000              | 60.77                       | 32,832                | 32,832                             | 9.12                                    |
| EBT                 | 65            | 39.00  | 140,400             | _                           | _                     | _                                  | _                                       |
| DWC                 | 10            | 6.00   | 21,600              | 200.00                      | 43,200                | 43,200                             | 12.00                                   |
|                     | 100           | 60.00  | 216,000             | 35.20                       | 76,032                | 76,032                             | 21.12                                   |
| Brent C. Jewell     |               |  |                     |                             |                       |                                    |   |
| Net Sales           | 25            | 11.25  | 39,375              | 60.77                       | 23,940                | 23,940                             | 6.84                                    |
| EBT                 | 65            | 29.25  | 102,375             | _                           | _                     | _                                  | _                                       |
| DWC                 | 10            | 4.50   | 15,750              | 200.00                      | 31,500                | 31,500                             | 9.00                                    |
|                     | 100           | 45.00  | 157,500             | 35.20                       | 55,440                | 55,440                             | 15.84                                   |
| Gary R. Johnson     |               |  |                     |                             |                       |                                    |   |
| Net Sales           | 25            | 10.00  | 25,900              | 60.77                       | 15,747                | 15,747                             | 6.08                                    |
| EBT                 | 65            | 26.00  | 67,340              | _                           | _                     | _                                  | _                                       |
| DWC                 | 10            | 4.00   | 10,360              | 200.00                      | 20,720                | 20,720                             | 8.00                                    |
|                     | 100           | 40.00  | 103,600             | 35.20                       | 36,467                | 36,467                             | 14.08                                   |
|                     |               |  |                     |                             |                       |                                    |   |

(1) The individual approved payout amount for each of Messrs. Puishys, Porter Johnson and Ms. Beithon is less than the maximum allocation of the bonus pool under our Executive MIP for such individual.

Long-Term Incentive Compensation. We utilize two instruments to deliver long-term incentive compensation. The mix of long-term incentive instruments is determined annually by the Committee, and for fiscal 2019 were restricted stock awards and two-year performance-based awards. We issue two-year performance-based awards only in the first year of the two-year performance cycle (granted every other year using an end-to-end performance cycle).

Restricted Stock Awards. Each year, the Committee approves a fixed dollar value of the restricted stock award for each executive for the just-completed fiscal year. For our Chief Executive Officer, the Committee begins its deliberations with a preliminary targeted fixed dollar value, as a percentage of base salary, which is compared to competitive levels of long-term incentives for comparable Chief Executive Officer positions in the market, based on data provided by the Committee's independent compensation consultant, and increases or decreases the preliminary targeted fixed dollar value after considering the results of the Chief Executive

Officer annual performance evaluation by our non-employee directors. For our Other Named Executive Officers, our Chief Executive Officer recommends to the Committee a preliminary targeted fixed dollar value, as percentage of base salary, which is compared to competitive levels of long-term incentives for comparable positions in the market, based on data provided by the Committee's independent compensation consultant and also recommends increases or decreases in the preliminary targeted fixed dollar value for each of our Other Named Executive Officers based on his or her contributions to the Company's performance, future leadership potential, and subjective evaluation of his or her individual performance for the just completed fiscal year. Restricted stock awards generally vest in three equal annual installments commencing on April 30 of the year following the date of the award. Upon issuance of the restricted stock, each holder is entitled to the rights of a shareholder, including the right to vote the shares of restricted stock and receive any dividends and any other distributions.

On April 26, 2018, the Committee determined that Messrs. Puishys, Porter and G. Johnson and Ms. Beithon had substantially met his or her individual business objectives for fiscal 2018; however, the Committee used negative discretion in determining the final fixed dollar value of such awards by reducing the preliminary targeted fixed dollar value of the awards based on the Company's performance during fiscal 2018. Mr. Jewell joined our Company on May 29, 2018 and was awarded a restricted stock award for 6,000, that vests in two equal annual installments commencing on May 29, 2019. Information regarding the restricted stock awards made to all Named Executive Officers during fiscal 2019 is set forth below.

### Fiscal 2019 Restricted Stock Awards

| Name                | Shares of Restricted<br>Stock Awarded (#) | Value of Award (\$) | Percentage of Fiscal<br>2019 Salary (%) | Grant Price (\$) (2) |
|---------------------|---|---------------------|---|----------------------|
| Joseph F. Puishys   | 17,365                                    | 727,420             | 78                                      | 41.89                |
| James S. Porter     | 5,250                                     | 219,923             | 51                                      | 41.89                |
| Patricia A. Beithon | 3,750                                     | 157,088             | 44                                      | 41.89                |
| Brent C. Jewell     | 6,000                                     | 258,300             | 74                                      | 43.05                |
| Gary R. Johnson     | 2,450                                     | 102,631             | 40                                      | 41.89                |

<sup>(1)</sup> The value of the award was calculated by multiplying the number of shares of restricted stock awarded by, the closing price of our common stock on the NASDAQ Stock Market on the date of grant. The awards to Messrs. Puishys, Porter and G. Johnson and Ms. Beithon were made on April 26, 2018. The award to Mr. Jewell was made on May 29, 2018, which was the date he joined our Company.

Two-Year Performance-Based Awards. Our Company has granted two-year performance-based awards as a component of long-term incentive compensation since fiscal 2013. The Committee believes that two-year performance-based awards provide incentive for executives to focus on the achievement of specific two-year financial performance goals that are aligned with business fundamentals. The Committee also believes that these awards, which are settled in cash, are better instruments for delivering long-term incentive compensation than equity-based awards, as they are not dilutive to our shareholders. The two-year performance-based awards are designed to reward sustainable, profitable growth consistent with our strategic plan. The Committee evaluates this program regularly and again determined that a two-year performance cycle provides the necessary line of sight to set realistic targets aligned with our Company's objectives given the cyclicality of our business even though it is a performance cycle less than what proxy advisory firms prefer to see. For the fiscal 2019-2020 cash-based performance awards the financial performance metrics are cumulative ret sales, cumulative EPS and average ROIC.

The two-year performance-based awards are end-to-end awards, meaning that a new cycle begins only when the prior cycle is completed as shown below. They have two-year performance periods and pay out in two equal annual installments after completion of the performance period. Generally, two-year performance awards are made in the first quarter of the first fiscal year of the two-year performance period. The two-year performance periods do not overlap; therefore, a grant of this award is made every other year.

Non-overlapping cycles avoid the potential confusion associated with using different targets on the same metric or different metrics in the same year. The eamed award is paid out in two equal installments, with 50% of the eamed award paid in the first quarter of the year following completion of the performance cycle and the remaining 50% paid one-year later (approximately three-years after commencement of the performance cycle), with each payment contingent on the executive being employed by our Company on the date the payment is made. The Committee believes this payment approach for the eamed award promotes retention. 17.2% of our Chief Executive Officer's two-year performance-based award is mandatorily deferred pursuant to our Deferred Compensation Plan.

<sup>(2)</sup> The closing price of our common stock on the NASDAO Stock Market on the date of grant.

| Two-Year Performance-Based Awards and Payout Cycle |                    |             |             |             |             |             |  |  |
|--|--------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|--|--|
| Award  | Fiscal 2017        | Fiscal 2018 | Fiscal 2019 | Fiscal 2020 | Fiscal 2021 | Fiscal 2022 |  |  |
| Fiscal 2017 - 2018 Award                           | Performance Period |             | 50% Paid    | 50% Paid    |             |             |  |  |
| Fiscal 2019 - 2020 Award                           |                    | Performanc  | e Period    | 50% Paid    | 50% Paid    |             |  |  |

- Performance award cycles are measured on a fiscal year basis (March February).
- Award payouts are made 50% at the end of the two-year performance cycle (usually in May) and 50% in the following year (usually in March) promoting
  continued retention for plan participants.

The Committee determines the dollar value of two-year performance-based awards granted to each participating executive at the target performance level based on consideration of individual performance, our Company performance, market data and trends, internal equity, executive potential and input from our Chief Executive Officer with respect to our Other Named Executive Officers and other participating executives. The dollar value at the threshold performance level is determined as a percentage of base salary. Generally, if the threshold performance level for all performance goals is achieved, 50% or less of the target award will be earned; if target performance for all performance goals is achieved, 200% of the target award will be earned; and if maximum performance level for all performance goals is achieved, 200% of the target award will be earned in threshold performance goal is achieved and the threshold performance is not achieved for any of the other performance goals, less than 50% of the target award will be earned based on the weighting allocated for that specific performance goal. For any performance between these levels, awards will be interpolated.

On April 26, 2018, after completion of the fiscal 2018 audit, the Committee determined the amount earned for the fiscal 2017 - 2018 cash-based performance awards, and the first and second installments of such awards were paid on May 11, 2018 and March 15, 2019, respectively. The payouts of the fiscal 2017 - 2018 cash-based performance awards were reported in our 2018 proxy statement.

On June 27, 2018, the Committee established the fiscal 2019 - 2020 cash-based performance awards. The Committee determined the dollar value for the fiscal 2019 - 2020 cash-based performance awards as a percentage of fiscal 2019 base salary at the threshold, target and maximum award levels for each of our Named Executive Officers. The financial performance metrics for these awards are average ROIC, cumulative EPS and cumulative net sales.

The table below sets forth certain information with respect to our fiscal 2019 - 2020 performance-based awards payout ranges as a percentage of salary at threshold, target and maximum performance.

### Fiscal 2019-2020 Performance-Based Award Payout Ranges

|                     |              | Threshold Payment(1) |   | Target Payout(2)  |   | Maximum Payout(3) |   |
|---------------------|--------------|----------------------|---|-------------------|---|-------------------|---|
| Name                | Fiscal Years | Award Amount (\$)    | As a Percentage of<br>Fiscal 2019 Salary<br>(%) | Award Amount (\$) | As a Percentage of<br>Fiscal 2019 Salary<br>(%) | Award Amount (\$) | As a Percentage of<br>Fiscal 2019 Salary<br>(%) |
| Joseph F. Puishys   | 2019-2020    | 451,917              | 48  | 2,711,500         | 290   | 5,423,000         | 580   |
| James S. Porter     | 2019-2020    | 130,500              | 30  | 783,000           | 180   | 1.566,000         | 360   |
| Patricia A. Beithon | 2019-2020    | 93,600               | 26  | 561,600           | 156   | 1,123,200         | 312   |
| Brent C. Jewell     | 2019-2020    | 84,000               | 24  | 504,000           | 144   | 1,008,000         | 288   |
| Gary R. Johnson     | 2019-2020    | 38,850               | 15  | 233,100           | 90  | 466,200           | 180   |

<sup>(1)</sup> Assumes threshold performance level is achieved for only one of the performance goals and is not achieved for any other performance goals. If actual results are below threshold performance level for all performance goals, the payout will be zero.

Chief Executive Officer Evaluation Incentive. In order to encourage Mr. Puishys to continue to drive growth, operational improvement and successful implementation of our Company's strategic plan and to remain with our Company, our Board of Directors established an evaluation incentive program for Mr. Puishys. This incentive is a one-year, evaluation-based, cash incentive award.

<sup>(2)</sup> Assumes target performance level is achieved for all performance goals.

<sup>(3)</sup> Assumes maximum performance level is achieved for all performance goals.

Any amounts earned pursuant to the CEO evaluation incentive program are mandatorily deferred into our Deferred Compensation Plan. In the case of death, disability or retirement, Mr. Puishys, or his estate, as applicable, will receive a pro-rata portion of the incentive. In the case of a change-in-control, as defined in the incentive agreement, the incentive will be adjusted by the Committee in its sole discretion. The incentive is subject to our Company's clawback policy.

<u>Fiscal 2019 CEO Evaluation Incentive</u>. The amount of incentive earned, if any, is based upon the average rating Mr. Puishys receives on the annual performance evaluation conducted by our Board and his achievement of his fiscal 2019 individual business objectives. Our Chief Executive Officer's performance criteria for fiscal 2019 were based upon integration of EFCO Corporation, bench strength/succession planning, new market growth and Architectural Framing Systems segment synergies.

If Mr. Puishys met or exceeded his individual business objectives, he had the potential to earn an evaluation incentive award between \$233,750 at target and \$467,500 at maximum, which will then be mandatorily deferred pursuant to our Deferred Compensation Plan. There is no threshold performance level for such an evaluation incentive award and the Compensation Committee may determine, in its sole discretion, to reduce the amount of incentive earned or to not award any incentive, depending upon actual performance achieved.

On April 25, 2019, our Board of Directors determined that Mr. Puishys had substantially met certain areas of his fiscal 2019 individual business objectives and awarded our Chief Executive Officer \$198,688, which was mandatorily deferred pursuant to our Deferred Compensation Plan, as required by the award agreement.

Other Benefit Programs. Executive officers, including our Named Executive Officers, are eligible to participate in our 401(k) Retirement Plan, described under the heading "401(k) Retirement Plan", and our Employee Stock Purchase Plan, which allows participants to purchase shares of our Company's common stock by contributing up to \$500 per week, with our Company contributing an amount equal to 15% of the participant's weekly contributions, on substantially the same terms as all of our other employees. Our executive officers all other full-time employees, with the exception that we offer enhanced long-term disability benefits to our executive officers.

Additionally, our executive officers may participate in voluntary non-qualified deferred compensation plans, as described under the headings "Deferred Compensation Plan" and "Legacy Deferred Compensation Plan".

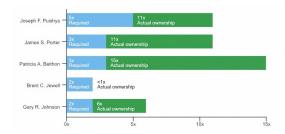
We have entered into change-in-control severance agreements with each of our Named Executive Officers. The Committee does not consider specific amounts payable under these arrangements when establishing annual compensation. See "Change-in-Control Severance Agreements" and "Executive Benefits and Payments Upon Termination and Change-in-Control" for more information on these arrangements.

Generally, we do not make perquisites available to our Named Executive Officers, other than the reimbursement of financial and estate planning fees of up to \$2,000 annually, enhanced long-term disability benefits, payment of relocation expenses, reimbursement of annual executive health physical costs up to \$3,000 annually and reimbursement of spousal/guest travel expenses for certain Company events. We do not provide tax reimbursement or tax "gross-ups" on any perquisites.

### **Executive Stock Ownership Guidelines**

Stock ownership guidelines for executives have been in place since 2001. The Committee monitors compliance with our stock ownership guidelines annually. Each executive has five years from the date he or she becomes subject to the stock ownership guidelines to meet his or her ownership guideline. If an executive is promoted and the target is increased, an additional three-year period is provided to meet the ownership guideline. For purposes of calculating stock ownership, we include unvested shares of restricted stock but do not include unexercised stock option awards. Shares owned are valued based on the average closing price of our common stock for the just completed fiscal year.

The graph below shows the stock ownership guideline for each of our Named Executive Officers and summarizes the shares held as a multiple of base salary for our Named Executive Officers as of March 2, 2019, the last day of fiscal 2019. Currently, all of our Named Executive Officers exceed their ownership requirements, except for Mr. Jewell, who joined our Company on May 29, 2018 and is currently on pace to meet our guideline within five years of joining our Company. None of our Named Executive Officers has pledged shares of our common stock as collateral for personal loans or other obligations.



### **Hedging Policy**

Our Board of Directors believes that the interests of our executive officers, employees and members of our Board of Directors should be aligned with the interests of our shareholders. As a result, we have adopted a hedging policy that prohibits all employees and members of our Board of Directors from engaging in the purchase or sale of financial instruments (including prepaid variable forward contracts, equity swaps, collars and exchange funds) that are designed to hedge or offset any decrease in the market value of our Company's securities.

### Clawback Policy

Our Board of Directors adopted a policy regarding "clawbacks" for Named Executive Officers and other key executives for performance-based short-term and long-term incentive compensation plans as of March 3, 2014. The policy provides the Board the discretion to clawback incentive compensation awarded or paid during the three-year period preceding the date of a restatement of the Company's financial statements due to material noncompliance with any financial reporting requirement under the U.S. federal securities laws.

### Compensation Risk Analysis

During fiscal 2019, the Committee, with the assistance of its independent compensation consultant and management, assessed the risk in our compensation plans, practices and policies. In performing this risk assessment, the Committee considered:

- The mix of fixed and variable compensation:
- The mix of short-term and long-term incentive compensation;
- The extent to which performance metrics are directly reflected in our audited financial statements or other objective reports;
- The relative weighting of the performance metrics;
- The likelihood that achievement of performance metrics could have a material impact on our financial performance in succeeding fiscal periods;
- The various compensation risk control mitigation features in our compensation plans, including balanced financial performance metrics that include revenue, earnings and operational metrics;
- Multiple financial performance metrics for our annual cash incentive and long-term cash-based incentive plans; Different financial performance metrics for our annual cash incentive and long-term cash-based incentive plans;
- Appropriate maximum caps on our annual cash incentive and long-term performance-based incentive plans and annual equity awards;
- Management stock ownership guidelines; and
- Our clawback and hedging policies.

The Committee annually assesses the risk of our compensation programs, policies and practices. The Committee does not believe any of our Company's compensation programs create risks that are reasonably likely to have a material adverse effect on our Company.

### **Summary Compensation Table**

The following Summary Compensation Table sets forth the total compensation in all capacities for fiscal 2019, 2018 and 2017 awarded to our Named Executive Officers.

### **Summary Compensation Table**

Change in Pension

| Name and<br>Principal<br>Position   | Fiscal<br>Year | Salary (\$) (1) | Bonus (\$) | Stock Awards (\$) (2) | Non-Equity Incentive Plan Compensation (\$) (3) | Change in Pension Value and Non- Qualified Deferred Compensation Earnings (\$) (4) | All Other Compensation (\$) (5) | Total (\$) |
|---|----------------|-----------------|------------|-----------------------|---|--|---------------------------------|------------|
| Joseph F.<br>Puishys  | 2019           | 935,000         |            | 727,420               | 544,264   |  | 43,852                          | 2,250,536  |
| Chief<br>Executive<br>Officer and   | 2018           | 928,077         | _          | 935,002               | 2,013,116                                       | _  | 43,387                          | 3,919,582  |
| President   | 2017           | 901,058         | _          | 1,018,429             | 2,045,000                                       | _  | 52,739                          | 4,017,226  |
| James S. Porter   | 2019           | 435,000         | _          | 219,923               | 114,840   | _  | 17,455                          | 787,218    |
| Executive Vice<br>President and<br>Chief Financial                            | 2018           | 432,571         | _          | 250,700               | 522,093   | _  | 15,961                          | 1,221,325  |
| Officer   | 2017           | 425,628         | _          | 274,806               | 484,397   | _  | 16,728                          | 1,201,559  |
| Patricia A.<br>Beithon  | 2019           | 360,000         | _          | 157.088               | 76.032  | (15,210)   | 18,715                          | 596,625    |
| General<br>Counsel and<br>Corporate   | 2018           | 357,923         | _          | 179,850               | 374,000   | 24,347   | 18,030                          | 954,150    |
| Secretary   | 2017           | 350,942         | _          | 197,599               | 320,305   | 21,824   | 18,144                          | 908,814    |
| Brent C. Jewell  (6) Senior Vice President, Business Development and Strategy | 2019           | 267,885         | 44,560     | 258,300               | 55,440  | _  | 13,557                          | 639,742    |
| Gary R.<br>Johnson  | 2019           | 257,058         | _          | 102,631               | 36,467  | 13,590   | 11,249                          | 420,995    |
| Senior Vice<br>President and  | 2018           | 245,272         | -          | 77,935                | 148,952   | 17,641   | 8,992                           | 498,792    |
| Treasurer   | 2017           | 242,562         | _          | 87,284                | 147,419   | 13,068   | 13,435                          | 503,768    |

<sup>(1)</sup> Our fiscal 2019 and 2018 years each had 52 weeks and our fiscal 2017 year had 53 weeks; the amounts shown in this column for fiscal 2017 include 53 weeks of salary.

Our Executive MIP is discussed under the heading "Executive MIP" and the fiscal 2019 annual cash incentive awards and fiscal 2019 CEO evaluation incentive made pursuant to such plan are discussed under the heading "Fiscal 2019 Annual Cash Incentive Payouts", "Fiscal 2019 CEO Annual Evaluation Incentive," and "Grants of Plan-Based Awards."

The amount in this column for fiscal 2018 represents the full earned amount of the fiscal 2017 - 2018 performance-based awards for the two-year performance eyele made pursuant to our Stock Incentive Plan, reported in a single year as required by applicable SEC rules. Actual payments of the earned fiscal 2017 - 2018 performance-based awards were made in two-equal installments following the performance period and are contingent on active employment on each applicable payment date. For our Chief Executive Officer, \$307,896 of the \$1,785,794 of the amount earned of the fiscal 2017 - 2018 performance-based award was mandatorily deferred pursuant to our Deferred Compensation Plan, and the balance of the award was paid out in two equal annual installments. The first payment of the fiscal 2017 - 2018 performance-based awards was made on May 11, 2018 and the second payment was made on March 15, 2019. The amount in this column for fiscal 2018 for our Chief Executive Officer also includes the fiscal 2018 CEO evaluation incentive award of \$227,322 that was made pursuant to our Executive MIP, which was mandatorily deferred into our Deferred Compensation Plan.

The following table sets forth information with respect to fiscal 2018 non-equity incentive plan compensation for our Named Executive Officers.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>(2)</sup> The amounts shown in this column represent the grant date fair value of the restricted stock awards made in fiscal 2019, 2018 and 2017. These amounts are calculated in accordance with US GAAP based on the closing share price of our common stock on the date of grant. See Note 12, Share-Based Compensation, to our audited financial statements for the fiscal year ended March 2, 2019.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>(3)</sup> The amounts in this column for fiscal 2019 for our Chief Executive Officer represents the annual cash incentive award of \$345,576 and evaluation incentive of \$198,688, which was deferred into our Deferred Compensation Plan, and for our Other Named Executive Officers represents only the annual cash incentive awards. The fiscal 2019 annual cash incentive awards were made pursuant to our Executive MIP.

| Name                | Fiscal Year | Annual Cash Incentive Awards<br>Earned (\$) | Two-Year Performance-Based<br>Awards Earned (\$) | CEO Evaluation Incentive (\$) |
|---------------------|-------------|---|--|-------------------------------|
| Joseph F. Puishys   | 2018        |   | 1,785,794  | 227,322                       |
| James S. Porter     | 2018        |   | 522,093  | _                             |
| Patricia A. Beithon | 2018        | _   | 374,000  | _                             |
| Brent C. Jewell     | 2018        | N/A   | N/A  | _                             |
| Gary R. Johnson     | 2018        | _   | 148,952  | _                             |

The amounts in this column for fiscal 2017 for our Chief Executive Officer represent the fiscal 2017 annual cash incentive award of \$1,600,000 and fiscal 2017 CEO evaluation incentive award of \$445,000, which was deferred into our Deferred Compensation Plan, and for our Other Named Executive Officers represents only the fiscal 2017 annual cash incentive awards. The fiscal 2017 annual cash incentive awards and fiscal 2017 CEO evaluation incentive award were both made pursuant to our Executive MIP.

(4) The following table shows each component of the "Change in Pension Value and Non-Qualified Deferred Compensation Earnings" column for each of our Named Executive Officers for fiscal 2019, 2018 and 2017.

| Name                | Fiscal Year | Change in Pension Value (\$) | Above Market Earnings on Amounts Deferred<br>Pursuant to our Legacy Deferred<br>Compensation Plan (\$) |
|---------------------|-------------|------------------------------|--|
|                     | 2019        | Change in 1 ension value (3) | Compensation 1 ian (3)   |
| Joseph F. Puishys   |             | <del>-</del>                 | _  |
|                     | 2018        | _                            | _  |
|                     | 2017        | _                            | _  |
| James S. Porter     | 2019        | _                            | _  |
|                     | 2018        | _                            | _  |
|                     | 2017        | _                            | _  |
| Patricia A. Beithon | 2019        | (18,187)                     | 2,977  |
|                     | 2018        | 20,482                       | 3,865  |
|                     | 2017        | 18,961                       | 2,863  |
| Brent C. Jewell     | 2019        | _                            | _  |
| Gary R. Johnson     | 2019        | _                            | 13,590   |
|                     | 2018        | _                            | 17,641   |
|                     | 2017        | _                            | 13,068   |

(5) The following table shows each component of the "All Other Compensation" column for each of our Named Executive Officers for fiscal 2019.

| Name                | Perquisites (\$)     | Executive Health Physical Reimbursement (\$) | Company Matching<br>Contributions to Defined<br>Contribution Plans (\$) (a) | Dividends or Earnings<br>on Stock Awards (\$) (b) | Total All Other<br>Compensation (\$) |
|---------------------|----------------------|--|---|---|--------------------------------------|
| Joseph F. Puishys   | 9,623 <sup>(c)</sup> | 650  | 9,625   | 23,954  | 43,852                               |
| James S. Porter     | 1,365 <sup>(d)</sup> | _  | 9,345   | 6,745   | 17,455                               |
| Patricia A. Beithon | 1,140 (c)            | _  | 12,745  | 4,830   | 18,715                               |
| Brent C. Jewell     | 2,175 (f)            | _  | 8,442   | 2,940   | 13,557                               |
| Gary R. Johnson     | 2,937 (g)            | _  | 5,677   | 2,635   | 11,249                               |

(a) This column reports the amounts we set aside or accrued during fiscal 2019 under our 401(k) Retirement Plan and Employee Stock Purchase Plan as matching contributions on our Named Executive Officers' contributions to such plans. Such contribution amounts are set forth in the table below. Our Named Executive Officers are eligible to participate in our 401(k) Retirement Plan and Employee Stock Purchase Plan on the same basis as all eligible employees.

| Name                | 401(k) Retirement Plan Matching<br>Contributions (\$) | Employee Stock Purchase Plan 15%<br>Matching Contributions (\$) |
|---------------------|---|---|
| Joseph F. Puishys   | 9,625   | _   |
| James S. Porter     | 7,785   | 1,560   |
| Patricia A. Beithon | 9,625   | 3,120   |
| Brent C. Jewell     | 8,442   | _   |
| Gary R. Johnson     | 5,677   | _   |

<sup>(</sup>b) This column represents dividends paid on unvested restricted stock.

<sup>(</sup>a) Includes \$2,000 for reimbursement of financial planning fees, \$1,140 in premiums paid for enhanced long-term disability insurance, \$3,000 for an enhanced access medical care program, and \$3,483 for reimbursement of spousal travel.

<sup>(</sup>d) Consists of \$1,140 in premiums paid for enhanced long-term disability insurance and \$225 for reimbursement of spousal travel.

<sup>(</sup>e) Consists of premiums paid for enhanced long-term disability insurance

- (9) Includes \$2,000 for reimbursement of financial planning fees, \$175 in premiums paid for enhanced long-term disability insurance.
- (g) Includes \$1,960 for reimbursement of financial planning fees and \$977 in premiums for enhanced long-term insurance.

6 Mr. Jewell joined our Company on May 29, 2018.

### Grants of Plan-Based Awards

The following table sets forth information for our Named Executive Officers concerning the following plan-based awards made during fiscal 2019: (i) estimated possible payouts for fiscal 2019 annual cash incentive awards; (ii) the grant date value of the restricted stock awards; and (iii) estimated possible payouts for the fiscal 2019 CEO evaluation incentive award.

### Fiscal 2019 Grants of Plan-Based Awards

|  |  |         | ed Possible Payouts und | All Other Stock<br>Awards: Number<br>of Shares of | Grant Date<br>Fair Value of<br>Stock and |         |
|--|--|---------|-------------------------|---|--|---------|
| Name   | Date Threshold (\$) Target (\$) Maximum (\$) |         |                         | Stock or<br>Units (#) <sup>(2)</sup>              | Option<br>Awards (\$) <sup>(3)</sup>     |         |
| Joseph F. Puishys                                  |  |         |                         |   |  |         |
| Fiscal 2019 annual cash incentive                  | 4/26/18                                      | 49,088  | 981,750                 | 1,936,500   | _  | _       |
| Restricted stock                                   | 4/26/18                                      | _       | _                       | _   | 17,365                                   | 727,420 |
| Fiscal 2019 CEO evaluation incentive               | 4/26/18                                      | (4)     | 233,750                 | 467,500   | _  | _       |
| Fiscal 2019 - 2020 cash-based<br>performance award | 6/28/18                                      | 451,917 | 2,711,500               | 5,423,000   | _  | _       |
| James S. Porter                                    |  |         |                         |   |  |         |
| Fiscal 2019 annual cash incentive                  | 4/26/18                                      | 16,313  | 326,250                 | 652,500   | _  | _       |
| Restricted stock                                   | 4/26/18                                      | _       | _                       | _   | 5,250                                    | 219,923 |
| Fiscal 2019 - 2020 cash-based<br>performance award | 6/27/18                                      | 130,500 | 783,000                 | 1,566,000   | _  | _       |
| Patricia A. Beithon                                |  |         |                         |   |  |         |
| Fiscal 2019 annual cash incentive                  | 4/26/18                                      | 10,800  | 216,000                 | 432,000   | _  | _       |
| Restricted stock                                   | 4/26/18                                      | _       | _                       | _   | 3,750                                    | 157,088 |
| Fiscal 2019 - 2020 cash-based<br>performance award | 6/27/18                                      | 93,600  | 561,600                 | 1,123,200   | _  | _       |
| Brent C. Jewell                                    |  |         |                         |   |  |         |
| Fiscal 2019 annual cash incentive                  | 5/29/18                                      | 7,875   | 157,500                 | 315,000   | _  |         |
| Restricted stock                                   | 5/29/18                                      | _       | _                       | _   | 6,000                                    | 258,300 |
| Fiscal 2019 - 2020 cash-based<br>performance award | 6/27/18                                      | 84,000  | 504,000                 | 1,008,000   | _  |         |
| Gary R. Johnson                                    |  |         |                         |   |  |         |
| Fiscal 2019 annual cash incentive                  | 4/26/18                                      | 5,180   | 103,600                 | 207,200   | _  | _       |
| Restricted stock                                   | 4/26/18                                      | _       | _                       | _   | 2,450                                    | 102,631 |
| Fiscal 2019 - 2020 cash-based performance award    | 6/27/18                                      | 38,850  | 233,100                 | 466,200   | _  | _       |
|  |  |         |                         |   |  |         |

0) These columns show the range of possible payouts under the fiscal 2019 annual cash incentive awards, fiscal 2019 - 2020 cash-based performance awards, and fiscal 2019 CEO evaluation incentive award. All of the fiscal 2019 annual cash incentive awards to our Named Executive Officers, with the exception of Mr. Jewell, and the fiscal 2019 CEO evaluation incentive were made pursuant to our Executive MIP described under the heading "Executive MIP". Amounts to be earned pursuant to the fiscal 2019 annual cash incentive awards are based on results achieved against financial performance goals. The fiscal 2019 CEO evaluation incentive award is based on the assessment by our Board of Mr. Puishys' achievement of his individual business objectives for fiscal 2019 as reflected in the CEO's annual performance evaluation conducted by our Board. All of the fiscal 2019 - 2020 cash-based performance awards were made pursuant to our Stock Incentive Plan and are based on the results achieved against financial performance goals over the two-year performance period. Since the two-year performance awards made in fiscal 2020.

Amounts shown in the "Threshold" column assume threshold performance level is achieved for only the performance goal with the lowest weighting and is not achieved for any other performance goals. Amounts shown in the "Target" and "Maximum" columns assume target and maximum performance levels, respectively, are achieved for all performance goals. The fiscal 2019 annual cash incentive award payouts and fiscal 2019 CEO evaluation incentive are included in the

"Summary Compensation Table" in the column titled "Non-Equity Incentive Plan Compensation" and described under the headings "Fiscal 2019 Annual Cash Incentive Payouts" and "Fiscal 2019 CEO Evaluation Incentive", respectively.

<sup>(2)</sup> For our Named Executive Officers, except Mr. Jewell, these restricted stock awards were based on performance during fiscal 2018 and vest in three equal annual installments commencing on April 30, 2019. Mr. Jewell's restricted stock award was made when he joined our Company on May 29, 2018 and vests in two equal annual installments commencing on May 29, 2019. Dividends or other distributions (whether cash, stock or otherwise) with respect to the shares of restricted stock will be paid during the vesting period. In the event of total disability or death prior to the end of the vesting period, the shares of restricted stock will be distributed at the end of the vesting period to the participant, in the event of disability, or to his or her estate, in the event of death. Our restricted stock program is described under "Restricted Stock Awards".

<sup>(3)</sup> The fair value of the restricted stock awards was calculated in accordance with FASB ASC Topic 781 by multiplying the number of shares of our common stock by the closing price of our common stock on the NASDAQ Global Select Market on the date of grant. The closing price of our common stock on the NASDAQ Stock Market was \$41.89 on April 26, 2018, the date of grant for Messrs, Puishys, Porter and G. Johnson and Ms. Beithon and \$43.05 on May 29, 2018, the date of grant for Mr. Jewell.

(4) There is no threshold performance level for the fiscal 2019 CEO evaluation incentive award

### Outstanding Equity Awards at Fiscal Year-End

The following table summarizes the equity awards held by our Named Executive Officers as of March 2, 2019, the last day of fiscal 2019.

### Outstanding Equity Awards at 2019 Fiscal Year-End

|                      | Option Awa  | Stock Awards   |  |   |   |
|----------------------|---|--|--|---|---|
| Option Grant<br>Date | Number of Securities<br>Underlying Unexercised<br>Options Exercisable (#) | Option Exercise<br>Price (\$) (1)  | Option Expiration<br>Date  | Number of Shares or Units of<br>Stock That Have Not Vested<br>(#)   | Market Value of Shares or<br>Units of Stock That Have Not<br>Vested (\$) (2)  |
| 8/22/2011(3)         | 100,341   | 8.34   | 8/22/2021  |   |   |
| _                    | _   | _  | _  | 8,192(4)  | 295,158   |
| _                    | _   | _  | _  | 11,437(5)   | 412,075   |
| _                    | _   | _  | _  | 17,365(6)   | 625,661   |
| _                    | _   | _  | _  | 2,100(4)  | 75,663  |
| _                    | _   | _  | _  | 3,067(5)  | 110,504   |
| _                    | _   | _  | _  | 5,250(6)  | 189,158   |
|                      |   |  |  |   |   |
| _                    | _   | _  | _  | 1,510(4)  | 54,405  |
| _                    | _   | _  | _  | 2,200(5)  | 79,266  |
| _                    | _   | _  | _  | 3,750(6)  | 135,113   |
| _                    | _   | _  | _  | 6,000(7)  | 216,180   |
| _                    | _   | _  | _  | 667(4)  | 24,032  |
| _                    | _   | _  | _  | 953(5)  | 34,337  |
| _                    | _   | _  | _  | 2,450(6)  | 88,274  |
|                      | 8/22/2011 <sup>(1)</sup>  | Option Grant Date  Number of Securities Underlying Unexercised Options Exercisable (#)  8/22/2011 <sup>(2)</sup> 100,341 | Option Grant Date         Underlying Unexercised Options Exercise Price (\$\sigma\$)           8/22/2011 <sup>(3)</sup> 100,341         8.34           —         —         — | Option Grant Date         Number of Securities Underlying Unexercised Questions Exercisable (#)         Option Exercise Price (\$) (0)         Option Expiration Date           8/22/2011(0)         100,341         8.34         8/22/2021           -         -         -         -           -         -         -         -           -         -         -         -           -         -         -         -           -         -         -         -           -         -         -         -           -         -         -         -           -         -         -         -           -         -         -         -           -         -         -         -           -         -         -         -           -         -         -         -           -         -         -         -           -         -         -         -           -         -         -         -           -         -         -         -           -         -         -         -           -         -         - | Option Grand Date         Number of Securities Underlying Unexercised (Price (S) 0)         Option Expercises (B) 0 (H)         Option Expercise (B) 0 (H)         Option Expercise (B) 0 (H)         Number of Shares or Units of Stock That Have Not Vested (H)           8/22/2011(a)         100,341         8.34         8/22/2021         —           —         4         —         —         8,192(a)           —         4         —         —         11,437(b)         —         11,437(b)         —         17,365(b)         —         2,100(a)         —         2,100(a)         —         3,067(b)         —         5,250(b)         —         5,250(b)         —         5,250(b)         —         1,510(a)         —         2,200(b)         —         3,750(a)         —         6,000(c)         —         6,000(c)         —         667(a)         —         953(b)         —         953(b)         —         953(b)         —         953(b)         —         953(b)         —         —         953(b)         —         —         953(b)         —         —         —         953(b)         —         —         —         —         —         —         953(b)         —         —         —         —         —         —         — |

<sup>(1)</sup> The exercise price for all stock option is 100% of the closing price of our common stock on the NASDAQ Stock Market on the date of grant.

### Option Exercises and Stock Vested

The following table sets forth information on stock option and SAR award exercises and restricted stock awards vested during fiscal 2019 for each of our Named Executive Officers.

<sup>(2)</sup> The market value is calculated by multiplying the closing price of \$36.03, the closing price of our common stock on the NASDAQ Stock Market on March 1, 2019, the last trading day of fiscal 2019, by the number of shares of restricted stock that had not vested as of March 2, 2019, the last day of fiscal 2019.

<sup>(3)</sup> Represents a stock option award that vested in equal, annual installments on the first three anniversaries of the date of grant and has a 10-year term.

<sup>(4)</sup> Represents an unvested restricted stock award granted on April 30, 2016, which vests in three equal annual installments commencing on April 30, 2017.

<sup>(5)</sup> Represents an unvested restricted stock award granted on April 27, 2017, which vests in three equal annual installments commencing on April 30, 2018.

<sup>(6)</sup> Represents an unvested restricted stock award granted on April 26, 2018, which vests in three equal installments commencing on April 30, 2019.

<sup>(1)</sup> Represents an unvested restricted stock award granted on May 29, 2018, which vests in two equal annual installments commencing on May 29, 2019.

### Fiscal 2019 Option Exercises and Stock Vested

|                     | Option A                                     | Awards                              | Stock Awards                                    |                                    |  |
|---------------------|--|-------------------------------------|---|------------------------------------|--|
| Name                | Number of Shares Acquired on<br>Exercise (#) | Value Realized on Exercise (\$) (1) | Number of Shares Acquired on<br>Vesting (#) (2) | Value Realized on Vesting (\$) (3) |  |
| Joseph F. Puishys   |  |                                     | 20,146  | 828,202                            |  |
| James S. Porter     | _  | _                                   | 5,180   | 212,950                            |  |
| Patricia A. Beithon | 17,104                                       | 340,199                             | 3,613   | 148,530                            |  |
| Brent C. Jewell     | _  | _                                   | _   | _                                  |  |
| Gary R. Johnson     | _  | _                                   | 1,625   | 66,804                             |  |

<sup>(1)</sup> The value realized is the difference between the exercise price per share and the closing price of our common stock on the NASDAQ Global Select Market on the date of exercise multiplied by the number of shares acquired on exercise of the option.

### Retirement Plan Compensation

### Legacy Officers' Supplemental Executive Retirement Plan

Our Legacy Officers' Supplemental Executive Retirement Plan ("Legacy SERP") is a non-qualified, defined benefit retirement plan in which only six current or former members of senior management participate, including Ms. Beithon, who is our only current Named Executive Officer that is a participant in the plan. Our Legacy SERP was amended in October 2008 so that no benefits will accrue to participants after December 31, 2008.

Benefits under our Legacy SERP are based on a participant's highest average compensation for the five highest consecutive, completed calendar years of annual compensation during the last 10 years of employment. For purposes of calculating Legacy SERP benefits, compensation is divided into two categories: base salary and bonus compensation. Bonus compensation is the participant's annual cash incentive compensation but does not include equity or deferred compensation (when received).

Benefits under our Legacy SERP are calculated as an annuity equal to a participant's years of service to our Company multiplied by the sum of 2% of his or her average monthly bonus compensation, offset by benefits to be received under social security, our 401(k) Retirement Plan and our other defined contribution pension plans from contributions made by our Company. The maximum number of years of service that will be credited to any participant is 20 years. Benefits payable are generally a single life annuity unless the participant has made an election to receive a joint and survivor annuity or 10-year term certain and life annuity (both of which would be a reduced monthly benefit). A lump-sum payment is not available.

Under our Legacy SERP, the normal retirement age is 65 and a participant must be at least 55 years old to be eligible for benefits. If a participant retires from or terminates his or her employment with our Company on or after age 55 and elects to receive benefits prior to age 65, the participant's monthly benefit will be reduced five-ninths of one percent for each of the first 60 months and five-eighteenths of one percent for each of the next 60 months by which the annuity starting date precedes the calendar month in which the participant would attain age 65.

### Fiscal 2019 Pension Benefits Table

The following table shows the present value of accumulated benefits under our Legacy SERP as of March 2, 2019, the measurement date used in preparing our fiscal 2019 audited financial statements included in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended March 2, 2019, years of service credit and payments during fiscal 2019 for Ms. Beithon, our only Named Executive Officer who participant in our Legacy SERP. Our Chief Executive Officer is not a participant in our Legacy SERP.

### Fiscal 2019 Pension Benefits Table

| Name                | Number of Years Credited Service | Present Value of Accumulated Benefit (\$) | Payments During Last Fiscal Year (\$) |
|---------------------|----------------------------------|---|---------------------------------------|
| Patricia A. Beithon | 9                                | 589,590                                   | _                                     |

<sup>(1)</sup> The present value of accumulated benefits is based on the assumptions used in determining our Legacy SERP benefit obligations and net periodic benefit cost for financial reporting purposes, except that no pre-retirement mortality assumption is used for these calculations. A complete description of the accounting policies

<sup>(2)</sup> Includes shares of restricted stocks that became vested and were distributed during fiscal 2019.

<sup>(</sup>a) The value realized is calculated by multiplying \$41.11, the closing price of our common stock on the NASDAQ Global Select Market on April 30, 2018, by the shares of restricted stock that became vested on April 30, 2018.

and assumptions we used to calculate the present value of accumulated benefits can be found in Note 9, Employee Benefit Plans - Officers' Supplemental Executive Retirement Plan (SERP), Obligations and Funded Status of Defined-Benefit Pension Plans and Additional Information, to our audited financial statements included in this Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended March 2, 2019.

### 401(k) Retirement Plan

We provide our tax-qualified 401(k) Retirement Plan to substantially all of our U.S.-based, non-union employees and union employees at two of our manufacturing facilities, who are scheduled to work more than 1,000 hours in a plan year. A participating employee may elect to contribute up to 60% of eligible earnings on a pre-tax basis into his or her 401(k) Retirement Plan account. We make a matching contribution for all of our eligible U.S.-based, non-union employees equal to 100% of the first 1% and 50% of the next 5% of the eligible compensation that the employee contributes to the plan, and matching contributions are made by our Company for union employees according to the terms of union contracts. Our employees are fully vested in their own contributions and become fully vested in our matching contributions after two-years of vesting service.

### Non-Qualified Deferred Compensation

### Deferred Compensation Plan

Our Deferred Compensation Plan is a non-qualified deferred compensation plan for a select group of management and other highly compensated employees of our Company and our subsidiaries, including our Named Executive Officers. For the 2018, 2017 and 2016 calendar years, approximately 212, 193 and 179 of our employees, respectively, were eligible to participate in our Deferred Compensation Plan and approximately 219 employees are eligible for the 2019 calendar year. Our Deferred Compensation Plan allows for deferrals by participants of up to 75% of base salary and sales commissions, and up to 100% of bonuses and other cash or equity-based compensation approved by the Committee, and also provides that we may establish rules permitting a participant to defer performance-based compensation up to six months prior to the end of a performance period. There is no maximum dollar limit on the amount that may be deferred by a participant each year. A participant in our Deferred Compensation Plan may elect to have the participant's account credited with earnings and investment gains and losses by assuming that deferred amounts were invested in one or more of 17 hypothetical investment fund options selected by the participant, which had investment returns ranging from (18.02%) to 7.54% for calendar 2018. An Apogee common stock fund is not one of the investment options available under our Deferred Compensation Plan. Participants are permitted to change their investment elections at any time. We may also make discretionary contributions to a participant's account under our Deferred Compensation Plan, and our Company will designate a vesting schedule for each such contribution. The participants are always 100% vested in the amount they defer and the earnings, gains and losses credited to their accounts. Participants are entitled to receive a distribution from their account upon: a separation from service, a specified date, death, disability, retirement (as defined in our Deferred Compensation Plan), or unforeseeable emergency t

### Legacy Deferred Compensation Plan

Our Legacy Deferred Compensation Plan is a non-qualified deferred compensation plan for a select group of management or highly compensated employees of our Company and subsidiaries; however, in October 2010, the plan was amended to prohibit any future participant deferrals to the plan after our fiscal 2011. A participant in our Legacy Deferred Compensation Plan may choose to have his or her account credited with the applicable interest rate as set forth in the plan or credited with earnings and investment gains and losses by assuming the deferred amounts were invested in one or more of 17 hypothetical investment fund options selected by the participant, which had investment returns ranging from (18.02%) to 7.54% for calendar 2018. For amounts deferred for plan years beginning on or after January 1, 2010, the applicable interest rate, which is not considered to be an "above-market" interest rate, is the monthly average yield for the last calendar month of the prior fiscal year on U.S. Treasury securities adjusted to a constant maturity of 10 years; or (ii) one-half of the rate of Apogee's after-tax return on beginning shareholders' equity for the prior fiscal year. Our Legacy Deferred Compensation Plan is an unfunded obligation of Apogee, and participants are unsecured creditors of Apogee. Distributions are in either a lump sum or installments.

### **Deferred Compensation Table**

The table below provides information on our Named Executive Officers' compensation earned with respect to fiscal 2019 and deferred under our Deferred Compensation Plan and Legacy Deferred Compensation Plan.

### Fiscal 2019 Deferred Compensation

| Name                | Name of Plan          | Executive<br>Contributions in<br>Last Fiscal Year<br>(\$) | Registrant<br>Contributions in Last<br>Fiscal Year (\$) | Aggregate Earnings<br>in Last Fiscal<br>Year (\$) (1) | Aggregate<br>Withdrawals /<br>Distributions (\$) | Aggregate Balance at<br>Last Fiscal Year End (\$) |
|---------------------|-----------------------|---|---|---|--|---|
| Joseph F. Puishys   | Deferred Comp.        | _   | 198,688 (2)   | _   | _  | 2,382,759 (3)                                     |
|                     | Legacy Deferred Comp. | _   | _   | _   | _  | _   |
| James S. Porter     | Deferred Comp.        | _   | _   | _   | _  | _   |
|                     | Legacy Deferred Comp. | _   | _   | _   | _  | _   |
| Patricia A. Beithon | Deferred Comp.        | _   | _   | _   | _  | _   |
|                     | Legacy Deferred Comp. | _   | _   | 2,977   | _  | 60,418 (4)  |
| Brent C. Jewell     | Deferred Comp.        | _   | _   | _   | _  | _   |
|                     | Legacy Deferred Comp. | _   | _   | _   | _  | _   |
| Gary R. Johnson     | Deferred Comp.        | _   | _   | _   | _  | 71,970 (5)  |
|                     | Legacy Deferred Comp. | _   | _   | 13,590  | _  | 275,782 (5)                                       |

(1) Pursuant to SEC rules, all earnings on non-qualified deferred compensation during fiscal 2019 in excess of 3.46%, 120% of the applicable federal rate compounded annually, have been deemed "above-market earnings." During fiscal 2019, the interest paid on amounts deferred for plan years beginning prior to January 1, 2010, pursuant to our Legacy Deferred Compensation Plan was 8.45%. These amounts are reported in the "Change in Pension Value and Non-Qualified Deferred Compensation Earnings" column of the "Summary Compensation Table".

(2) The amount reported for Mr. Puishys is reported in the "Summary Compensation Table" in the "Non-Equity Incentive Plan Compensation" column.

(a) A portion of the amount reported for Mr. Puishys is reported in the "Summary Compensation Table" in the "Non-Equity Incentive Plan Compensation" column for fiscal 2019, 2018 and 2017; and a portion of this amount was earned prior to fiscal 2017; however, all of the amounts earned prior to fiscal 2017 were reported in the "Summary Compensation Table" in the year earned.

(4) The amount reported for Ms. Beithon is not reported in the "Summary Compensation Table" because all of this amount was earned by her prior to fiscal 2017; however, all of this amount was reported in the "Summary Compensation Table" in the years earned.

6) Portions of the amounts reported for Mr. G. Johnson for our Deferred Compensation Plan are reported in the "Summary Compensation Table" for fiscal 2017 and amounts earned by him prior to 2017 were included in the "Summary Compensation Table" in the years earned. The amount reported for Mr. G. Johnson for our Legacy Deferred Compensation Plan is not reported in the "Summary Compensation Table", because all of this amount was earned by him prior to fiscal 2017; however, all of this amount would have been reported in the "Summary Compensation Table" in the years earned, provided Mr. G. Johnson was a Named Executive Officer in such years.

### Potential Payments Upon Termination or Following a Change-in-Control

### Payments Made Upon Termination

We do not have any employment agreements, employment arrangements or general severance plans covering our Named Executive Officers. Except as discussed below, if the employment of any of our Named Executive Officers is voluntarily or involuntarily terminated, no additional payments or benefits will accrue or be owed to him or her, other than what the Named Executive Officer has accrued and is vested in under our benefit plans discussed above, including under the heading "Retirement Plan Compensation." Any severance benefits payable to our Named Executive Officers not triggered by a change-in-control would be determined by the Compensation Committee at its discretion.

Except in connection with a change-in-control, a voluntary or involuntary termination will not trigger an acceleration of the vesting of any outstanding equity awards.

### Payments Made Upon Disability

Under the terms of the Apogee Enterprises, Inc. Short-Term and Long-Term Disability Plans, each of our Named Executive Officers who participates in such plans is eligible for a disability benefit. All of our Named Executive Officers have elected to participate in our enhanced Long-Term Disability Plan and are eligible for a disability benefit that is equal to 100% of his or her monthly base salary during the first three months of disability and 60% of his or her monthly base salary up to a maximum of \$15,000 per month thereafter.

If the employment of any of our Named Executive Officers is terminated due to disability, the terms of our stock option and restricted stock agreements provide for the immediate vesting of such awards.

Pursuant to the terms of the CEO evaluation incentive award and the portion of his two-year performance-based awards received by Mr. Puishys that must be mandatorily deferred. Mr. Puishys will receive the full-value of the deferred amounts if his employment is terminated due to disability.

### Payments Made Upon Death

The terms of our stock option and restricted stock agreements provide for the immediate vesting of such awards in the event of the Named Executive Officer's

Pursuant to the terms of the CEO evaluation incentive awards and the portion of his two-year performance-based awards received by Mr. Puishys that must be mandatorily deferred, Mr. Puishys' estate will receive the full-value of the deferred amounts in the event of his death.

### Change-in-Control Severance Agreements

The Committee believes that offering a change-in-control program provides executive officers a degree of security in the event of a corporate transaction and allows for better alignment of executive officer and shareholder interests. We have entered into a change-in-control severance agreement (the "CIC Severance Agreement") with each of our Named Executive Officers. Our CIC Severance Agreement is designed to retain our executive officers and provide for continuity of management in the event of an actual or threatened "Change-in-Control of Apogee" (as defined in the CIC Severance Agreement).

Our CIC Severance Agreement contains a "double trigger" for benefits, which means that there must be both a "Change-in-Control of Apogee" and a termination of the executive's employment for the provisions to apply. It provides that, in the event of a "Change-in-Control of Apogee," each executive officer who is a party to an agreement will have specific rights and receive specified benefits if the executive officer is terminated without "Cause" (as defined in the CIC Severance Agreement) or the executive officer voluntarily terminates his or her employment for "Good Reason" (as defined in the CIC Severance Agreement) within two-years after the "Change-in-Control of Apogee." In these circumstances, Messrs. Puishys, Porter and Jewell, and Ms. Beithon will each receive a severance payment equal to two times his or her annual base salary and annual cash incentive at target level performance for such fiscal year. Mr. G. Johnson will receive a severance payment equal to his annual base salary and annual cash incentive at target level performance for such fiscal year. In addition, all unvested restricted stock awards held by the executive officer that have not vested by the employment termination date will be immediately vested on such date. Our CIC Severance Agreement provides that, for a 12- or 24-month period following a "Change-in-Control of Apogee," our Company will continue to provide medical and dental insurance coverage for the executive officer and the executive officer sequents or will reimburse the executive officer of the cost of obtaining substantially similar benefits. No benefits will be paid to the executive officer pursuant to the CIC Severance Agreement unless the executive officer executive officer as and delivers to Apogee a release of claims.

We do not provide a tax gross-up payment for any excise tax liability under Internal Revenue Code Section 4999 related to Section 280G excess parachute payments.

Our CIC Severance Agreements contain a "best-net-benefit" provision which provides that, in the event that payments under the agreements trigger excise tax for the executive officer, the executive officer has the option of either reducing the severance payment, if the net benefit is greater than paying the excise tax, or paying the excise tax himself or herself.

To receive these severance benefits, the executive officer shall not: (1) solicit, directly or indirectly, any of our existing or prospective customers, vendors or suppliers for a purpose competitive to our business or to encourage such customers, vendors or suppliers to terminate business with us; (2) solicit, directly or indirectly, any of our employees to terminate his or her employment; or (3) engage in or carry on, directly or indirectly, in certain geographic markets a business competitive with our business, for a period of 12 or 24 months following termination of employment.

The CIC Severance Agreements continue through December 31 of each year and provide for automatic extension for one-year terms prior to a Change-in-Control unless we give prior notice of termination.

The terms of the agreements for two-year performance-based awards provide that in the event of a Change-in-Control prior to the end of a performance period, the performance period is deemed to end on the date of the Change-in-Control and our Named Executive Officers are entitled to retain performance-based awards, to the extent earned, as adjusted for the truncated performance period. The terms of the restricted stock agreements for awards made pursuant to our Stock Incentive Plan contain a "double trigger" for acceleration of vesting upon a Change-in-Control, which means that there must be both a Change-in-Control and the Named Executive Officer's employment must be terminated by the Company without "Cause" (as defined in the restricted stock agreement) or by the Named Executive Officer for "Good Reason" (as defined in the restricted stock agreement) in order for all shares of restricted stock that have not vested by the Employment Termination Date to vest. In the event of a "Change-in-Control"

of Apogee," Mr. Puishys will receive the full-value of the CEO evaluation incentive awards and the portion of the CEO's two-year performance-based awards, that were mandatorily deferred.

Executive Benefits and Payments Upon Termination and Change-in-Control

The table below shows potential payments to our Named Executive Officers upon certain terminations pursuant to disability, death and a change-in-control of our Company. The table below assumes that disability, death or the termination of employment occurred or the change-in-control was effective as of March 1, 2019, the last trading day of fiscal 2019. The amounts shown are estimates of the amounts that would be paid to the executives upon termination of employment or the change-in-control, in addition to the base salary and bonus earned by our Named Executive Officers for fiscal 2019. We have not included payments or benefits that are fully vested and disclosed in the "Fiscal 2019 Pension Benefits" table or the "Fiscal 2019 Deferred Compensation" table. The actual amounts to be paid can only be determined at the actual time of a Named Executive Officer's termination of employment.

| Name and Type of Payment                                | Payments Upon<br>Disability (\$) | Payments Upon Death<br>(\$) | Payments After a<br>Change-in-Control<br>without Termination<br>(\$) | Payments Upon<br>Involuntary or Good<br>Reason Termination After<br>a Change-in-Control<br>Occurs (S) |
|---|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|--|---|
| Joseph F. Puishys                                       |                                  |                             |  |   |
| Cash Severance Payment                                  | _                                | _                           | _  | 3,833,500 (1)   |
| Health Insurance Benefits                               | _                                | =                           | _  | 26,454  |
| Reimbursement of Legal Costs                            | _                                | _                           | _  | (2)   |
| Acceleration of Vesting                                 |                                  |                             |  |   |
| Restricted Stock  | 1,332,894 (3)                    | 1,332,894 (3)               | _  | 1,332,894 (3)   |
| Performance-Based Awards                                | (4)                              | (4)                         | 465,565 (5)  | 465,565 (5)   |
| CEO Evaluation Incentive                                | 233,750 (6)                      | 233,750 (6)                 | 233,750 (6)  | 233,750 (6)   |
| Deferred Compensation                                   | 2,184,071 (7)                    | 2,184,071 (7)               | 2,184,071 (7)  | 2,184,071 (7)   |
| Disability Payments                                     | 368,751 (8)                      | _                           | _  | _   |
| Γotal   | 4,119,466                        | 3,750,715                   | 2,883,386  | 8,076,234   |
| James S. Porter   |                                  |                             |  |   |
| Cash Severance Payment                                  | _                                | _                           | _  | 1,522,500 (1)   |
| Health Insurance Benefits                               | _                                | _                           | _  | 26,454  |
| Reimbursement of Legal Costs                            | _                                | _                           | _  | (2)   |
| Acceleration of Vesting                                 |                                  |                             |  |   |
| Restricted Stock  | 375,325 (3)                      | 375,325 (3)                 | _  | 375,325 (3)   |
| Performance-Based Awards                                | — (4)                            | (4)                         | 134,441 (5)  | 134,441 (5)   |
| Disability Payments                                     | 243,750 (8)                      |                             | _  | _   |
| Total   | 619,075                          | 375,325                     | 134,441  | 2,058,720   |
| Patricia A. Beithon                                     |                                  |                             |  |   |
| Cash Severance Payment                                  | _                                | _                           | _  | 1,152,000 (1)   |
| Health Insurance Benefits                               | _                                | _                           | _  | 9,574   |
| Reimbursement of Legal Costs                            | _                                | _                           | _  | — (2)   |
| Acceleration of Vesting                                 |                                  |                             |  | (-)   |
| Restricted Stock  | 268,784 (3)                      | 268,784 (3)                 | _  | 268,784 (3)   |
| Performance-Based Awards                                | — (4)                            | — (4)                       | 96,427 (5)   | 96,427 (5)  |
| Disability Payments                                     | 225,000 (8)                      | _ (,,                       | , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,                                |   |
| Total   | 493,784                          | 268,784                     | 96,427   | 1,526,785   |
| Brent C. Jewell   | 175,701                          | 200,701                     | 70,127   | 1,520,705   |
| Cash Severance Payment                                  |                                  |                             |  | 1,120,000 (1)   |
| Health Insurance Benefits                               | _                                | _                           | _  | 29,138  |
|   | _                                | _                           | _  | 29,136  |
| Reimbursement of Legal Costs<br>Acceleration of Vesting | _                                | _                           | _  | — (2)   |
| Restricted Stock  | 216,180 (3)                      | 216,180 (3)                 |  | 216,180 (3)   |
| Performance-Based Awards                                |                                  |                             | -  |   |
|   | - (4)                            | — (4)                       | 86,537 (5)   | 86,537 (5)  |
| Disability Payments                                     | 222,501 (8)                      |                             |  |   |
| `otal   | 438,681                          | 216,180                     | 86,537   | 1,451,855   |
| Gary R. Johnson   |                                  |                             |  |   |
| ash Severance Payment                                   | -                                | _                           | _  | 362,600 (9)   |
| Iealth Insurance Benefits                               | _                                | _                           | _  | 10,826  |
| teimbursement of Legal Costs                            | _                                | _                           | _  | — (2)   |
| Acceleration of Vesting                                 |                                  |                             |  |   |
| Restricted Stock  | 146,642 (3)                      | 146,642 (3)                 | _  | 146,642 (3)   |
| Performance-Based Awards                                | — (4)                            | — (4)                       | 40,023 (5)   | 40,023 (5)  |
| Disability Payments                                     | 181,299 (8)                      |                             |  |   |
| Total   | 327,941                          | 146,642                     | 40,023   | 560,091   |

- (1) Equals the sum of (a) two times his or her annual base salary as of March 2, 2019, and (b) two times his or her fiscal 2019 annual cash incentive award at target level performance.
- (2) We will pay legal fees and expenses incurred to obtain or enforce any right or benefit under his or her CIC Severance Agreement
- b) Includes restricted stock awards, which would vest upon an assumed occurrence on March 1, 2019 of one of the following events: (a) disability; (b) death; or (c) termination following a Change-in-Control. The amount in this table represents such aggregate number of shares multiplied by \$36.03, the closing price of our common stock on the NASDAQ Stock Market on March 1, 2019, the last trading day of fiscal 2019.
- (4) In the event employment is terminated due to disability or death prior to the end of the performance period for the fiscal 2019 2020 performance-based awards, our Named Executive Officer, or his or her estate, as applicable, will be entitled to retain and receive a prorated portion (based on the amount of time elapsed between the beginning of the performance period and the date of termination) of the fiscal 2019 2020 performance-based awards at the end of the performance period to the extent earned. In addition, with respect to the portion of Mr. Puishys' fiscal 2019 2020 performance-based award that must be mandatorily deferred, in the event his employment is terminated due to disability or death prior to the end of the performance period, Mr. Puishys, or his estate, as applicable, will be entitled to retain and receive a prorated portion (based on the amount of time elapsed between the beginning of the performance period and the date of termination) to the extent earned. In addition, with
- (5) The amount represents the payout of fiscal 2019 2020 performance-based awards assuming the performance period ended upon the assumed occurrence on March 1, 2019 (one year and one day before the end of the two-year performance period) of one of the following events: (a) a Change-in-Control without termination; or (b) termination following a Change-in-Control. In addition, for Mr. Puishys, the amount includes the payout of the portion of his fiscal 2019 2020 performance-based award that must be mandatorily deferred assuming the performance period ended upon the assumed occurrence on March 1, 2019 (one year and one day before the end of the two-year performance period) of one of the following events: (a) Change-in-Control without termination; or (b) termination following a Change-in-Control.
- (6) The amount represents the payout of the fiscal 2019 CEO evaluation incentive award at target assuming that the performance period and retention period ended upon the assumed occurrence on March 1, 2019 (one year and one day before the end of the one-year performance period) of one of the following events: (a) disability; (b) death; (c) a Change-in-Control without termination; or (d) termination following a Change-in-Control.
- (i) The amount represents the payout of Mr. Puishys' balance in the Deferred Compensation Plan, which is attributable to the fiscal 2015 2018 CEO evaluation incentives and the portion of his fiscal 2015 2016 and fiscal 2017 2018 performance-based award incentives that were mandatorily deferred, assuming the retention period ended upon the assumed occurrence on March 1, 2019 of one of the following events: (a) disability; (b) death; (c) a Change-in-Control without termination; or (d) termination following a Change-in-Control.
- (8) This amount represents the annual disability payments during the first year of disability. Annual disability payments after the first year of disability would be \$180,000 for each of Messrs. Puishys, Porter and Jewell and Ms. Beithon and \$155,400 for Mr. G. Johnson.
- (9) Equals the sum of Mr. G. Johnson's (a) annual salary as of March 1, 2019 and (b) fiscal 2019 annual cash incentive award at target level performance.

### CEO Pay Ratio Disclosure

As required by Section 953(b) of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act, and item 402(u) of Regulation S-K, we are providing the following information about the relationship of the annual total compensation of our employees and the annual total compensation of Joseph F. Puishys, our Chief Executive Officer and President:

For the year ended March 2, 2019, our last completed fiscal year:

- the median of the annual total compensation of all employees of our Company (other than our Chief Executive Officer) was \$47,393; and
- the annual total compensation of our Chief Executive Officer, as reported in the Summary Compensation Table included, was \$2,250,536.

Based on this information for 2019, we reasonably estimate that the ratio of our CEO's annual total compensation to the annual total compensation of our median employee was 47. Our pay ratio estimate has been calculated in a manner consistent with Item 402(u) of Regulation S-K.

To identify the median of the annual total compensation of all our employees, as well as to determine the annual total compensation of our median employee, the methodology and the material assumptions, adjustments, and estimates that we used were as follows:

We determined that, as of December 31, 2018, our employee population consisted of 7,043 individuals (including full-time and part-time employees, other than the Chief Executive Officer, who were employed on December 31, 2018) working at the Company together with our consolidated subsidiaries. Of these individuals, 6,042 were located in the U.S. territories, and 1,001 were from our subsidiaries in Canada and Brazil. We chose to exclude all 192 of our employees from our Brazil subsidiary, which consists of 2.73% of our workforce, from the identification of "median employee," as permitted by SEC rules.

Our employee population, after taking into consideration the permitted adjustments described above, consisted of 6,851 members. In making this determination, we annualized the compensation of all employees included in the sample who were hired in calendar

year 2018, but did not work for us or our included subsidiaries for the entire twelve month period described below. Our adjusted employee population consisted of 6,042 employees in the U.S. and 809 employees located in Canada.

We identified our median employee based on the total cash and stock-based compensation earned during the twelve month period ended December 31, 2018. For purposes of determining the total compensation actually earned, we included: the amount of base salary (or, in the case of hourly workers, base wages including overtime pay) the employee received during the twelve months ended December 31, 2018, the amount of any cash incentives paid or deferred in such period (which include sales commissions as well as cash incentives that are generally paid for performance during the prior quarter or year), and the amount of any income from stock-based compensation, as reflected in our payroll records. For purposes of identifying the median employee, we applied the average exchange rate for calendar year 2018, which was U.S. dollars to Canadian dollars - 1.2957 CAD.

Once we identified our median employee, we then determined that employee's total compensation, including any perquisites and other benefits, in the same manner that we determine the total compensation of our named executive officers for purposes of the Summary Compensation Table disclosed above. The total compensation amount for our median employee for fiscal 2019 was determined to be \$47,393. This total compensation amount was then compensate to the total compensation of our CEO disclosed above in the Summary Compensation Table, of \$2,250,536. The elements included in the CEO's total compensation are fully discussed above in the footnotes to the Summary Compensation Table.

# ITEM 12. SECURITY OWNERSHIP OF CERTAIN BENEFICIAL OWNERS AND MANAGEMENT AND RELATED STOCKHOLDER MATTERS

### Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners

The following table sets forth information concerning beneficial ownership of our common stock outstanding as of April 12, 2019, by persons known to us to own more than 5% of our common stock. Unless otherwise indicated, the named holders have sole voting and investment power with respect to the shares beneficially owned by them.

| Name and Address of Beneficial Owner | Amount and Nature of Beneficial<br>Ownership (#) | Percentage of Common Stock<br>Outstanding (%) |
|--------------------------------------|--|---|
| BlackRock, Inc.                      | 4,087,324 (1)                                    | 15.3  |
| 55 East 52nd Street                  |  |   |
| New York, NY 10055                   |  |   |
| The Vanguard Group, Inc.             | 2,934,239 (2)                                    | 11.0  |
| 100 Vanguard Boulevard               |  |   |
| Malvern, PA 19355                    |  |   |
| Engaged Capital, LLC                 | 1,689,332 (3)                                    | 6.3   |
| 610 Newport Center Drive, Suite 250  |  |   |
| Newport Beach, CA 92660              |  |   |
| Dimensional Fund Advisors LP         | 1,540,199 (4)                                    | 5.8   |
| Building One                         |  |   |
| 6300 Bee Cave Road                   |  |   |
| Austin TX 78746                      |  |   |

(i) We have relied upon the information provided by BlackRock, Inc. in a Schedule 13G/A reporting information as of December 31, 2018. The Schedule 13G/A was filed by BlackRock, Inc. in its capacity as a parent holding company or control person and indicates that BlackRock, Inc. has sole investment power over 4,087,324 shares and sole voting power over 4,022,997 shares. BlackRock Fund Advisors, a subsidiary of BlackRock, Inc., beneficially owns 5% or greater of the outstanding shares of the security class reported on the Schedule 13G/A.

(2) We have relied upon the information provided by The Vanguard Group, Inc., an investment advisor ("Vanguard"), in a Schedule 13G/A reporting information as of January 31, 2019. Of the shares reported, Vanguard has sole investment power over 2,874,420 shares, shared investment power over 59,819 shares, sole voting power over 54,052 shares and shared voting power over 9,540 shares. Vanguard Fiduciary Trust Company, a wholly owned subsidiary of Vanguard, serving as an investment manager of collective trust accounts, is the beneficial owner of 50,279 shares and Vanguard Investments Australia, Ltd., a wholly owned subsidiary of Vanguard, serving as investment manager of Australian investment offerings, is the beneficial owner of 13,313 shares.

<sup>(3)</sup> We have relied upon the information provided by Engaged Capital, LLC ("Engaged Capital") and affiliated entities in a joint amended Schedule 13D filing reporting information as of February 8, 2019. The amended joint Schedule 13D filing was filed by Engaged Capital Flagship Master Fund, LP ("EC Flagship Master"); Engaged Capital Co-Invest VIII, LP ("EC Co-Invest VIII"); Engaged Capital Flagship Fund, LP ("EC Fund") as a feeder fund of EC Flagship Master; Engaged Capital Flagship Fund, Ltd. ("EC Offshore") as a feeder fund of EC Flagship Master; Engaged Capital as a general partner and investment advisor of each EC Flagship Master and EC Co-Invest VIII and investment advisor of a certain managed account (the "EC Account"); Engaged Capital Holdings, LLC ("Engaged Holdings") as managing member of Engaged Capital; and Glenn W. Welling, as Founder and Chief Investment Officer of Engaged Capital and sole member of Engaged Holdings. EC Co-Invest VIII beneficially owns and has sole voting and sole investment power over 720,608 shares.

Each of EC Flagship Master, EC Fund and EC Offshore beneficially owns and has sole voting and sole investment power over 888,183 shares. EC Account beneficially owns and has sole voting and sole investment power over 80,541 shares. Each of Engaged Capital, Engaged Holdings and Mr. Welling are deemed to beneficially own and have sole voting and investment power over 1,689,332 shares. Each of the Reporting Persons specifically disclaims beneficial ownership of the securities reported in the Schedule 13D filling that it or he does not directly own.

(4) We have relied the information provided by Dimensional Fund Advisors LP ("Dimensional Advisors") in a Schedule 13G reporting information as of December 31, 2018. Dimensional Advisors furnishes investment advice to four investment companies and serves as investment manager to certain other commingled funds, group trusts and separate accounts (such investment companies, group trusts and accounts are collectively referred to as the ("Funds"), subsidiaries of Dimensional Advisors may act as advisor or sub-advisor to certain Funds. All of the 1,540,199 shares listed are owned by the Funds. In its role as investment advisor, sub-advisor and/or manager, Dimensional Advisors or its subsidiaries (collectively "Dimensional") may possess sole investment power over 1,540,199 shares and sole to the proper over 1,451,194 shares held by the Funds. The Funds have the right to receive, or power to direct the receipt of dividends from, or the proceeds from the sale of the securities held in their respective accounts. In its role as investment advisor, sub-advisor and/or manager, Dimensional may be deemed to be a beneficial owner of the shares; however, Dimensional disclaims beneficial ownership of such shares. To the knowledge of Dimensional, the interest of any one such Fund does not exceed 5% of the class of securities.

### Security Ownership of Directors and Management

The following table sets forth the number of shares of our common stock beneficially owned as of April 12, 2019, by each of our directors, each of our executive officers named in the Summary Compensation Table and by all of our directors and executive officers as a group.

### Amount and Nature of Beneficial Ownership

| Name of Beneficial Owner                                     | Shares of Common<br>Stock Held (#) <sup>(1)</sup> (2) | Shares Underlying Options<br>Exercisable Within 60 Days<br>(#) (3) | Total Beneficial<br>Ownership (#) | Percentage of<br>Common Stock<br>Outstanding<br>(%) | Phantom Stock and<br>Restricted Stock<br>Units (#) (4) | Total Stock-Based<br>Ownership (#) (5) |
|--|---|--|-----------------------------------|---|--|--|
| Non-Employee Directors                                       | Stock Held (#)  | (#) **   | Ownership (#)                     | (70)  | Cints (#)  | Owner simp (#)                         |
| Bernard P. Aldrich   | 27,521  | _  | 27,521                            | *   | 49,289   | 76,810                                 |
| Jerome L. Davis  | 17,251  | _  | 17,251                            | *   | 26,139   | 43,390                                 |
| Sara L. Hays   | 12,407 (  | 5)   | 12,407                            | *   | 22,158   | 34,565                                 |
| Lloyd E. Johnson   | 1,720   | _  | 1,720                             | *   | 1,978  | 3,698                                  |
| Donald A. Nolan  | 5,326   | _  | 5,326                             | *   | 17,205   | 22,531                                 |
| Herbert K. Parker  | 14,330  | _  | 14,330                            | *   | _  | 14,330                                 |
| Mark A. Pompa  | _   | _  | _                                 | *   | 3,327  | 3,327                                  |
| Richard V. Reynolds  | 21,292  | _  | 21,292                            | *   | 32,487   | 53,779                                 |
| Patricia K. Wagner   | 6,696   | _  | 6,696                             | *   | _  | 6,696                                  |
| Named Executive Officers                                     |   |  |                                   |   |  |  |
| Joseph F. Puishys  | 259,441   | 7) 100,341   | 359,782                           | 1.3   | _  | 359,782                                |
| James S. Porter  | 115,488   | _  | 115,488                           | *   | _  | 115,488                                |
| Patricia A. Beithon  | 135,178   | _  | 135,178                           | *   | _  | 135,178                                |
| Brent C. Jewell  | 6,000   | _  | 6,000                             | *   | _  | 6,000                                  |
| Gary R. Johnson  | 37,024  | _  | 37,024                            | *   | _  | 37,024                                 |
| All directors and executive officers as a group (14 persons) | 659,674   | 100,341  | 760,015                           | 2.8   | 152,583  | 912,598                                |

<sup>\*</sup> Indicates less than 1%

©) For our non-employee directors, the number indicated includes the following shares of restricted stock issued to the named individual pursuant to our 2009 Non-Employee Director Stock Incentive Plan, as amended (2014) (the "Director Stock Plan"): 3,761 shares for each of Mr. Aldrich, and Ms. Hays and Ms. Wagner; 1,147 shares for Mr. L. Johnson; 2,330 shares for Mr. Parker; and 14,760 shares for all directors and executive officers as a group. All shares of restricted stock held pursuant to our Director Stock Plan are subject to future vesting conditions, and holders of such shares have no investment power over such shares.

For our executive officers, the number of shares indicated includes shares issued to the named individual pursuant to our 2009 Stock Incentive Plan (the "Stock Incentive Plan"), our Employee Stock Purchase Plan and our 401(k) Retirement Plan. The number of shares of restricted stock issued pursuant to our Stock Incentive Plan is set forth below.

<sup>(</sup>i) Unless otherwise indicated, the individuals listed in the table have sole voting and investment power with respect to the shares owned by them, and such shares are not subject to any pledge.

| Named Executive Officers  | Shares of Restricted Stock |
|---|----------------------------|
| Joseph F. Puishys   | 36,994                     |
| James S. Porter   | 10,417                     |
| Patricia A. Beithon   | 7,460                      |
| Brent C. Jewell   | 6,000                      |
| Gary R. Johnson   | 4,070                      |
| All directors and executive officers as a group<br>(14 persons) | 64,941                     |

All shares of restricted stock held pursuant to our Stock Incentive Plan are subject to future vesting conditions, and the holders of such shares have no investment power over such shares

(3) Includes shares underlying stock options exercisable currently or within 60 days after April 12, 2019.

(4) Includes phantom stock units, each representing the value of one share of our common stock, that are attributable to accounts in our Director Deferred Compensation Plan, which is described under the heading "Director Deferred Compensation Plan", and restricted stock units, each representing one share of our common stock that are issued pursuant to our Director Stock Plan, which is described under the heading "Restricted Stock Awards and Restricted Stock Unit Awards."

(5) The amounts in this column are derived by adding the amounts in the "Total Beneficial Ownership" and the "Phantom Stock and Restricted Stock Units" columns of the table.

(6) Includes shares held by a revocable trust for which Ms. Hays serves as trustee

(7) Includes 25,000 shares held by the Puishys Family Trust for which Mr. Puishys serves as trustee.

### Equity Plans

The following table summarizes, with respect to our equity compensation plans, the number of shares of our common stock to be issued upon exercise of outstanding options, warrants and other rights to acquire shares, the weighted-average exercise price of these outstanding options, warrants and rights, and the number of shares remaining available for future issuance under our equity compensation plans as of March 2, 2019, the last day of fiscal 2019.

| Plan Category  | Number of Securities to be<br>Issued Upon Exercise of<br>Outstanding Options,<br>Warrants and Rights | Weighted-Average Exercise<br>Price of Outstanding Options,<br>Warrants and Rights |         | Number of Securities Remaining<br>Available for Future Issuance under<br>Equity Compensation Plans<br>(Excluding Securities Reflected in<br>the First Column) |         |     |  |
|--|--|---|---------|---|---------|-----|--|
| Equity compensation plans approved by security holders     | 175,897  | (1)(2)  | N/A     | (3)   | 613,654 | (4) |  |
| Equity compensation plans not approved by security holders | 100,341  | (5)   | 8.34    |   | None    |     |  |
| Total  | 276,238  |   | \$ 8.34 |   | 613,654 |     |  |

(i) Includes restricted stock unit awards granted under our Stock Incentive Plan and Non-Employee Director Stock Incentive Plan and phantom shares under our Non-Employee Director Deferred Compensation Plan. Certain outstanding restricted stock units have dividend rights attached, but none of the restricted stock units are transferable.

(2) Pursuant to SEC rules and the reporting requirements for this table, we have not included in this column 246,836 shares of restricted stock that are issued and outstanding. All shares of restricted stock outstanding have dividend rights attached, but none of the shares of restricted stock are transferable.

(3) In calculating the weighted-average exercise price of outstanding options, warrants and rights, the restricted stock units and phantom shares do not have an exercise price.

(4) Pursuant to SEC Rules and the reporting requirements for this table, of these shares, 54,521 are available for issuance under our Legacy Partnership Plan; 451,424 are available for grant under our Stock Incentive Plan; 69,670 are available for grant under our Non-Employee Director Stock Incentive Plan; and 38,039 are available for grant under our Deferred Compensation Plan for Non-Employee Directors.

(6) Reflects stock options granted to Mr. Puishys on August 22, 2011 as inducement awards pursuant to the terms of his employment agreement with our Company effective as of August 22, 2011, that became fully vested on August 22, 2014. The options vested in equal annual installments over a three-year period beginning on August 22, 2012.

### ITEM 13. CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED TRANSACTIONS, AND DIRECTOR INDEPENDENCE

### Certain Relationships and Related Transactions

We have established written policies and procedures (the "Related Person Transaction Policy") to assist us in reviewing transactions in excess of \$120,000 involving our Company and our subsidiaries and Related Persons ("Related Persons Transactions"). A Related Person includes our Company's directors, director nominees, executive officers and beneficial owners of 5% or more of our Company's common stock and their respective Immediate Family Members (as defined in our Related Person Transaction Policy). Our Related Person Transaction Policy supplements our Code of Business Ethics and Conduct Conflict of Interest Policy, which applies to all of our employees and directors.

Our Related Person Transaction Policy requires any Related Person Transaction to be promptly reported to the Chair of our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee. In approving, ratifying or rejecting a Related Person Transaction, our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee will consider such information as it deems important to determine if the Related Person Transaction is fair to our Company. Our Conflict of Interest Policy requires our employees and directors to report to our General Counsel any potential conflict of interest situations involving and employee or director, or their Immediate Family Members. During fiscal 2019, there were no Related Party Transactions involving a Related Person, as defined in the policy.

### Director Independence

Under our Corporate Governance Guidelines, a substantial majority of the directors on our Board, and all members of our Audit, Compensation, and Nominating and Corporate Governance Committees must be independent. Each year, in accordance with NASDAQ rules, our Board of Directors affirmatively determines the independence of each director and nominee for election as a director in accordance with guidelines it has adopted, which include all elements of independence set forth in the NASDAQ listing standards.

Our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee reviewed the applicable legal standards for Board member and Board committee member independence and reported on its review to our Board of Directors. Based on this review, our Board of Directors has determined that the following non-employee directors are independent and have no material relationship with us except serving as a director and holding shares of our common stock: Bernard P. Aldrich, Jerome L. Davis, Sara L. Hays, Lloyd E. Johnson, Donald A. Nolan, Herbert K. Parker, Mark A. Pompa, Richard V. Reynolds and Patricia K. Wagner, as well as John T. Manning and Robert J. Marzec, both of whom retired from our Board of Directors effective as of our 2018 Annual Meeting of Shareholders. Our Board of Directors has determined that Joseph F. Puishys is not independent because he serves as our Chief Executive Officer and President.

### ITEM 14. PRINCIPAL ACCOUNTANT FEES AND SERVICES

### Audit Committee Report

Our Audit Committee oversees our financial reporting process (including our system of financial controls and internal and external auditing procedures) on behalf of our Board; oversees our program to ensure compliance with legal and regulatory requirements and ethical business practices; assesses and establishes policies and procedures to manage our financial reporting risk; and assesses our compliance with financial covenants in our debt instruments. Our Audit Committee is directly responsible for the appointment, compensation, retention and oversight of the work of our independent registered public accounting firm.

Our financial statements for the fiscal year ended March 2, 2019 were audited by Deloitte & Touche LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm.

Our Audit Committee has reviewed and discussed our audited financial statements with management and our independent registered public accounting firm. Our Audit Committee has discussed with our independent registered public accounting firm the matters required by Auditing Standard No. 16 ("Communications with Audit Committees"), as adopted by the U.S. Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (the "PCAOB"). In addition, our Audit Committee received from our independent registered public accounting firm the written disclosures and letter required by applicable requirements of the PCAOB regarding our independent registered public accounting firm's communications with our Audit Committee concerning independence, and has discussed with our independent registered public accounting firm the firm's independence.

Based on the review and discussions referred to above, our Audit Committee recommended to our Board of Directors that our audited financial statements be included in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended March 2, 2019, for filling with the SEC.

### Audit Committee of the Board of Directors of Apogee

Lloyd E. Johnson, Chair Herbert K. Parker Mark A. Pompa Patricia K. Wagner

### Audit Fees, Audit-Related Fees, Tax Fees and All Other Fees

For fiscal 2019 and 2018, we incurred the fees shown in the following table for professional services provided by Deloitte & Touche LLP, the member firms of Deloitte Touche Tohmatsu, and their respective affiliates (collectively, the "Deloitte Entities").

|                                   |          | Fiscal 2019 | Fiscal 2018     |
|-----------------------------------|----------|-------------|-----------------|
| Audit Fees(1)                     | \$<br>\$ | 1,991,700   | \$<br>1,863,300 |
| Audit-Related Fees <sup>(2)</sup> |          | 33,000      | 32,000          |
| Tax Fees(3)                       |          | 161,400     | 197,800         |
| Total                             | \$<br>5  | 2,186,100   | \$<br>2,093,100 |

<sup>(1)</sup> Audit fees consisted primarily of audit work related to preparation of our annual financial statements, audit of internal controls over financial reporting, review of the quarterly financial statements included in our quarterly reports on Form 10-Q and review of other SEC filings.

# Policy on Audit Committee Pre-Approval of Audit and Permissible Non-Audit Services Provided by Our Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

Consistent with policies of the SEC regarding auditor independence, our Audit Committee has responsibility for appointing, setting compensation and overseeing the work of our independent registered public accounting firm. In recognition of this responsibility, our Audit Committee established a policy to require pre-approval of all audit and permissible non-audit services provided by our independent registered public accounting firm. As permitted by regulations of the SEC, our Audit Committee delegated the authority to pre-approve services provided by our independent registered public accounting firm to the Chair of our Audit Committee, who reports any pre-approval decisions to our Audit Committee at its next regularly scheduled meeting.

All of the services provided by our independent registered public accounting firm in fiscal 2019 and 2018, including services related to the audit-related fees and tax fees described above, were approved by our Audit Committee under its pre-approval policy.

### PART IV

### ITEM 15. EXHIBITS AND FINANCIAL STATEMENT SCHEDULES

- a) List of documents filed as a part of this report:
- 1. Financial Statements The consolidated financial statements listed below are set forth in Item 8 of Part II of this report.

Consolidated Balance Sheets as of March 2, 2019 and March 3, 2018

Consolidated Results of Operations for the Years Ended March 2, 2019, March 3, 2018 and March 4, 2017

Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Earnings for the Years Ended March 2, 2019, March 3, 2018 and March 4, 2017

Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the Years Ended March 2, 2019, March 3, 2018 and March 4, 2017

Consolidated Statements of Shareholders' Equity for the Years Ended March 2, 2019, March 3, 2018 and March 4, 2017

Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements

2. Financial Statement Schedules - Valuation and Qualifying Accounts

<sup>(2)</sup> Audit-related fees primarily consisted of fees for the audit of our employee benefit plan.

<sup>(3)</sup> Tax fees for fiscal 2019 and 2018 consisted of \$62,600 and \$69,200, respectively, for U.S. and foreign tax return reviews and \$98,800 and \$128,600, respectively, for miscellaneous tax consultations.

| (In thousands)                      | Beg | llance at<br>inning of<br>Period | A  | equisitions | (  | harged to<br>Costs and<br>Expenses | <br>luctions from<br>Reserves <sup>(1)</sup> | Othe | er Changes <sup>(2)</sup> | Ba | lance at End<br>of<br>Period |
|-------------------------------------|-----|----------------------------------|----|-------------|----|------------------------------------|--|------|---------------------------|----|------------------------------|
| Allowances for doubtful receivables |     |                                  |    |             |    |                                    |  |      |                           |    |                              |
| For the year ended March 2, 2019    | \$  | 1,530                            | \$ | _           | \$ | 3,090                              | \$<br>223                                    | \$   | (25)                      | \$ | 4,372                        |
| For the year ended March 3, 2018    |     | 1,495                            |    | 252         |    | 1,345                              | 1,559  |      | (3)                       |    | 1,530                        |
| For the year ended March 4, 2017    |     | 2,497                            |    | 25          |    | (416)                              | 579  |      | (32)                      |    | 1,495                        |

(2) Result of foreign currency effects

All other schedules for which provision is made in the applicable accounting regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission have been omitted because they are not applicable or the required information is shown in the financial statements or notes thereto.

- 3. Exhibits Exhibits marked with an asterisk (\*) identify each management contract or compensatory plan or arrangement. Exhibits marked with a pound sign (#) are filed herewith. The remainder of the exhibits have heretofore been filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission and are incorporated herein by reference.
- 3.1 Restated Articles of Incorporation. Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.1 to Registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year-ended February 28, 2004.
- 3.2 Amended and Restated Bylaws of Apogee Enterprises, Inc. Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.1 to Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on July 3, 2018.
- 4.1 Specimen certificate for shares of common stock of Apogee Enterprises, Inc. Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.1 to Registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended March 3, 2012.
- 10.1\* Apogee Enterprises, Inc. Officers' Supplemental Executive Retirement Plan (2005 Restatement), First Amendment of Apogee Enterprises, Inc. Officers' Supplemental Executive Retirement Plan (2005 Restatement) and Second Amendment of Apogee Enterprises, Inc. Officers' Supplemental Executive Retirement Plan (2005 Restatement), Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on January 29, 2008.
- 10.2\* Third Amendment of Apogee Enterprises, Inc. Officers' Supplemental Executive Retirement Plan (2005 Restatement). Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 to Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on October 15, 2008.
- 10.3\* Apogee Enterprises, Inc. Deferred Compensation Plan for Non-Employee Directors (2014 Restatement). Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.4 to Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-8 filed on July 24, 2014.
- 10.5\* Apogee Enterprises, Inc. 2000 Employee Stock Purchase Plan (Amended and Restated Effective as of May 1, 2003). Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.4 to Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-8 filed on October 9, 2015.
- 10.6\* First Amendment of Apogee Enterprises, Inc. 2000 Employee Stock Purchase Plan (Amended and Restated Effective as of May 1, 2003) dated February 27, 2009. Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.5 to Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-8 filed on October 9, 2015.
- 10.8\* Apogee Enterprises, Inc. Non-Employee Director Charitable Matching Contribution Program, Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.25 to Registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year-ended February 26, 2005.
- 10.10\* Apogee Enterprises, Inc. Deferred Incentive Compensation Plan (2005 Restatement), Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to Registrant's
- Current Report on Form 8-K filed on October 17, 2006.

  10.11\* First Amendment of Apogee Enterprises, Inc. Deferred Incentive Compensation Plan (2005 Restatement). Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.4 to Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on October 15, 2008.
- 10.12\* Second Amendment of Apogee Enterprises, Inc. Deferred Incentive Compensation Plan (2005 Restatement). Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on March 4, 2009.
- 10.13\* Third Amendment of Apogee Enterprises, Inc. Deferred Incentive Compensation Plan (2005 Restatement), Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.5 to Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on October 12, 2010.
- 10.14\* Fourth Amendment of Apogee Enterprises, Inc. Deferred Incentive Compensation Plan (2005 Restatement). Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to Registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on January 6, 2011.
- 10.15\* Apogee Enterprises, Inc. Partnership Plan (2005 Restatement). Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.5 to Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on October 17, 2006.
- 10.16\* First Amendment of Apogee Enterprises, Inc. Partnership Plan (2005 Restatement). Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.6 to Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on October 15, 2008.
- 10.17\* Second Amendment of Apogee Enterprises, Inc. Partnership Plan (2005 Restatement). Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.8 to Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on March 4, 2009.
- 10.18\* Third Amendment of Apogee Enterprises, Inc. Partnership Plan (2005 Restatement), Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.4 to Registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on January 6, 2011.
- 10.19\* Apogee Enterprises, Inc. 2009 Stock Incentive Plan, as amended and restated (2011), Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on June 28, 2011.

- 10.20\* Apogee Enterprises, Inc. 2009 Non-Employee Director Stock Incentive Plan, as amended and restated (2014). Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.4 to Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-8 filed on July 24, 2014. 10.21\* Form of Restricted Stock Agreement under the Apogee Enterprises, Inc. 2009 Non-Employee Director Stock Incentive Plan. Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on June 30, 2009. 10.22\* Restricted Stock Deferral Program under the Apogee Enterprises, Inc. 2009 Non-Employee Director Stock Incentive Plan, as Amended and Restated (2014) (2015 Statement). Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on June 30, 2015.
- 10.23\* Form of Deferred Restricted Stock Unit Agreement under the Apogee Enterprises, Inc. 2009 Non-Employee Director Stock Incentive Plan, as Amended and Restated (2014) (2015 Statement). Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 to Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on
- June 30, 2015. 10.24\* Form of Restricted Stock Agreement under the Apogee Enterprises, Inc. 2009 Stock Incentive Plan for awards made on or after April 26, 2011.
- Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on May 2, 2011. 10.25\*
- Form of Performance Award Agreement under the Apogee Enterprises, Inc. 2009 Stock Incentive Plan, as amended and restated (2011). Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on May 5, 2014. Apogee Enterprises, Inc. 2011 Deferred Compensation Plan, effective January 1, 2011. Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Registrant's 10.26\*
- Current Report on Form 8-K filed on October 12, 2010. 10.27\* First Amendment to the Apogee Enterprises, Inc. 2011 Deferred Compensation Plan. Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to the
- Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed July 1, 2014. 10.28\* Second Amendment to the Apogee Enterprises, Inc. 2011 Deferred Compensation Plan. Incorporated herein by reference to Exhibit 10.2 to
- Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on June 29, 2016. Third Amendment to the Apogee Enterprises, Inc. 2011 Deferred Compensation Plan, dated October 5, 2017. Incorporated by reference to 10.29\*
- Exhibit 10.1 to the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on October 10, 2017. Amendment No. 1 to the Second Amended and Restated Credit Agreement, dated June 9, 2017, by and among the Company, the Lenders (as 10.30\* defined therein), and Wells Fargo Bank, NA, as administrative agent for the Lenders, swingline lender and (with Commerce Bank) issuer of letters of credit. Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on June 14, 2017.
- 10.31\* Form of Bonus Pool Award Agreement under the Apogee Enterprises, Inc. 2016 Executive Management Incentive Plan. Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on May 3, 2017.
- 10.32\* Form of Stock Option Agreement to be entered into by Apogee Enterprises, Inc. and Joseph F. Puishys on August 22, 2011. Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on August 8, 2011.
- Form of Bonus Pool Award Agreement under the Apogee Enterprises, Inc. 2012 Executive Management Incentive Plan. Incorporated by 10.33\* reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on May 5, 2014.
- 10.34\* Form of CEO Evaluation-Based Retention Incentive Agreement under the Apogee Enterprises, Inc. 2016 Executive Management Incentive Plan. Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on May 3, 2017.
- 10.35\* Apogee Enterprises, Inc. 2012 Executive Management Incentive Plan. Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Registrant's Current Report
- on Form 8-K filed on June 27, 2012. Stock Purchase Agreement, dated as of April 28, 2017, by and among Apogee Enterprises, Inc., EFCO Corporation, and Pella Corporation. 10.36\* Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 2.1 to the Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on May 2, 2017.
- 10.37\* Form of CEO Performance-Based Retention Incentive Agreement under the Apogee Enterprises, Inc. 2009 Stock Incentive Plan, as amended and restated (2011), Incorporated herein by reference to Exhibit 10.5 to Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on April 27, 2016.
- 10.38\* Form of Change-in-Control Severance Agreement, Incorporated herein by reference to Exhibit 10.38 to Registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on April 30, 2018.
- Form of CEO Evaluation-Based Retention Incentive Agreement under the Apogee Enterprises, Inc. 2012 Executive Management Incentive Plan. Incorporated herein by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on May 6, 2015, 10.39\*
- Apogee Enterprises, Inc. 2016 Executive Management Incentive Plan. Incorporated herein by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the Registrant's 10.40\* Current Report on Form 8-K filed on June 29, 2016.
- 10.41\* First Amendment to Apogee Enterprises, Inc. 2016 Executive Management Incentive Plan. Incorporated herein by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K/A filed on August 10, 2016.
- Share Purchase Agreement, dated November 5, 2013, between 2393514 Ontario Inc., Apogee Enterprises, Inc., PEF 2005 Alumicor Investment 10.42 Limited Partnership, on behalf of itself and as Sellers' Agent, Andre Belanger, Ken Rowson, John Castelhano, Anthony Kerwin, Lawrence Maker, Paul Antoniadis, and Alumicor Limited. Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 2.1 to Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on November 5, 2013.

| 10.43  | Second Amended and Restated Credit Agreement, dated November 2, 2016, by and among Apogee Enterprises, Inc., as the Borrower, the Lenders referred to therein, Wells Fargo Bank, National Association, as Administrative Agent, Swing Line Lender and Issuing Lender, and U.S. Bank National Association, as Syndication Agent and Issuing Lender. Incorporated herein by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on November 4, 2016.  |
|--------|--|
| 10.44  | Asset Purchase Agreement between Sotawall, Inc., Juan A. Speck and WPP Acquisition Corporation, dated December 14, 2016. Incorporated herein by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on December 20, 2016.   |
| 10.45* | Apogee Enterprises, Inc. 401(k) Retirement Plan, effective January 1, 2015. Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.4 to Registrant's Registration Statement on Form S-8 filed October 9, 2015.   |
| 10.46* | Form of CEO Evaluation-Based Retention Incentive Agreement under the Apogee Enterprises, Inc. 2016 Executive Management Incentive Plan. Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on May 3, 2017.   |
| 10.47  | Amendment No. 1 to the Second Amended and Restated Credit Agreement, dated as of June 9, 2017, by and among the Company, the Lenders (as defined therein), and Wells Fargo Bank, National Association, as administrative agent for the Lenders, swingline lender and (with Comerica Bank) issuer of letters of credit. Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on June 14, 2017.  |
| 10.48* | Third Amendment to the Apogee Enterprises, Inc. 2011 Deferred Compensation Plan, dated October 5, 2017. Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on October 10, 2017.  |
| 10.49* | Form of CEO Cash-Based Two-Year Performance Award Agreement under the Apogee Enterprises, Inc. 2009 Stock Incentive Plan, as amended and restated (2011). Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on July 3, 2018.  |
| 10.50* | Fourth Amendment to the Apogee Enterprises, Inc. 2011 Deferred Compensation Plan, dated June 28, 2018. Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 to Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on July 3, 2018.   |
| 10.51* | Form of CEO Evaluation-Based Incentive Agreement. Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.1 to Registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on May 2, 2018.  |
| 10.52  | Confidentiality Agreement, dated February 8, 2019, by and among Apogee Enterprises, Inc., and Engaged Capital LLC, Engaged Capital Flagship Master Fund, LP, Engaged Capital Flagship Fund, LP, |
| 21#    | Subsidiaries of the Registrant,  |
| 23#    | Consent of Deloitte & Touche LLP.  |
| 31.1#  | Certification of Chief Executive Officer pursuant to rule 13a-14(a) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.   |
| 31.2#  | Certification of Chief Financial Officer pursuant to rule 13a-14(a) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.   |
| 32.1#  | Certification of Chief Executive Officer pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.   |
| 32.2#  | Certification of Chief Financial Officer pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.   |
| 101    | The following materials from Apogee Enterprises, Inc.'s Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended March 2, 2019 are furnished herewith, formatted in XBRL (Extensible Business Reporting Language): (i) the Consolidated Balance Sheets as of March 2, 2019 and March 3, 2018, (ii) the Consolidated Results of Operations for the three years ended March 2, 2019, March 3, 2018 and March 4, 2017, (iii) the Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Earnings for the three years ended March 2, 2019, March 3, 2018 and March 4, 2017, (iv) the Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the three years ended March 2, 2019, March 3, 2018 and March 4, 2017, (v) the Consolidated Statements of Shareholders' Equity for the years ended March 2, 2019, March 3, 2018 and March 4, 2017 and (vi) the Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.  |

## ITEM 16. FORM 10-K SUMMARY

None.

### SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, on April 26, 2019.

APOGEE ENTERPRISES, INC.

/s/ Joseph F. Puishys

Joseph F. Puishys

President and Chief Executive Officer

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, this report has been signed below by the following persons on behalf of the registrant and in the capacities indicated on April 26, 2019.

| Signature              | Title  | Signature               | Title   |  |  |  |
|------------------------|--|-------------------------|---|--|--|--|
| /s/ Joseph F. Puishys  | President, CEO and                           | /s/ James S. Porter     | Executive Vice  |  |  |  |
| Joseph F. Puishys      | Director<br>(Principal Executive<br>Officer) | James S. Porter         | President and CFO<br>(Principal<br>Financial and<br>Accounting Officer) |  |  |  |
| /s/ Bernard P. Aldrich | Chairman                                     | /s/ Herbert K. Parker   | Director  |  |  |  |
| Bernard P. Aldrich     |  | Herbert K. Parker       |   |  |  |  |
| /s/ Jerome L. Davis    | Director                                     | /s/ Mark A. Pompa       | Director  |  |  |  |
| Jerome L. Davis        |  | Mark A. Pompa           |   |  |  |  |
| /s/ Sara L. Hays       | Director                                     | /s/ Richard V. Reynolds | Director  |  |  |  |
| Sara L. Hays           |  | Richard V. Reynolds     |   |  |  |  |
| /s/ Lloyd E. Johnson   | Director                                     | /s/ Patricia K. Wagner  | Director  |  |  |  |
| Lloyd E. Johnson       |  | Patricia K. Wagner      |   |  |  |  |
| /s/ Donald A. Nolan    | Director                                     |                         |   |  |  |  |
| Donald A. Nolan        |  |                         |   |  |  |  |

## SUBSIDIARIES OF THE REGISTRANT

The Company is the owner of all of the issued and outstanding stock of the following corporations, except as noted below.

| Name of Subsidiary                        | State or Country of<br>Incorporation |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| Prism Assurance, Ltd.                     | Vermont                              |
| Harmon, Inc.                              | Minnesota                            |
| Harmon Contract, Inc.                     | Minnesota                            |
| Viracon, Inc.                             | Minnesota                            |
| Viracon Georgia, Inc.(1)                  | Minnesota                            |
| Viracon Singapore Pte. Ltd <sup>(1)</sup> | Singapore                            |
| Glassec Vidros de Seguranca Ltda. (2)     | Brazil                               |
| Tru Vue, Inc.                             | Illinois                             |
| Tru Vue Netherlands, B.V. <sup>(3)</sup>  | Netherlands                          |
| Apogee Services, Inc.(4)                  | Minnesota                            |
| Apogee Wausau Group, Inc.                 | Wisconsin                            |
| Tubelite Inc.                             | Michigan                             |
| Alumicor Limited                          | Canada                               |
| Sotawall Limited                          | Canada                               |
| EFCO Corporation                          | Missouri                             |
| Velocity, A Viracon Company               | Minnesota                            |

<sup>(1)</sup> Owned by Viracon, Inc.

<sup>(2)</sup> Owned 99.9+% by Viracon, Inc. and <0.1% by Harmon Contract, Inc.
(3) Owned by Tru Vue, Inc.
(4) Owned by Harmon, Inc.

### CONSENT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

We consent to the incorporation by reference in Registration Statements Nos. 333-58181, 333-95863, 333-160205, 333-169944, 333-175404, 333-190179, 333-197617, 333-197618, 333-207364, and 333-207369 on Form S-8 of our reports dated April 26, 2019, relating to the consolidated financial statements and financial statement schedule of Apogee Enterprises, Inc. and subsidiaries (the "Company"), and the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting, appearing in this Annual Report on Form 10-K of Apogee Enterprises, Inc. for the year ended March 2, 2019.

/s/ Deloitte & Touche LLP

Minneapolis, Minnesota April 26, 2019

### CERTIFICATION

### I, Joseph F. Puishys, certify that:

- 1. I have reviewed this annual report on Form 10-K of Apogee Enterprises, Inc.;
- 2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
- 3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
- 4. The registrant's other certifying officer and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e)) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f)) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and have:
  - a) designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
  - b) designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
  - evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions
    about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on
    such evaluation; and
  - d) disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrants most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and
- 5. The registrant's other certifying officer and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
  - all significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
  - b) any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: April 26, 2019

/s/ Joseph F. Puishys

Joseph F. Puishys President and Chief Executive Officer

### CERTIFICATION

### I, James S. Porter, certify that:

- 1. I have reviewed this annual report on Form 10-K of Apogee Enterprises, Inc.;
- 2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
- 3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
- 4. The registrant's other certifying officer and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e)) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f)) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and have:
  - designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
  - designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
  - evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions
    about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on
    such evaluation; and
  - d) disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrants most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and
- 5. The registrant's other certifying officer and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
  - a) all significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
  - b) any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: April 26, 2019

/s/ James S. Porter

James S. Porter

Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer

# CERTIFICATION PURSUANT TO 18 U.S.C. SECTION 1350, AS ADOPTED PURSUANT TO SECTION 906 OF THE SARBANES-OXLEY ACT OF 2002

In connection with the Annual Report of Apogee Enterprises, Inc. (the "Company") on Form 10-K for the period ended March 2, 2019, as filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "Report"), I, Joseph F. Puishys, Chief Executive Officer of the Company, certify, pursuant to 18 U.S.C. §1350, as adopted pursuant §906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, that:

- (1) The Report fully complies with the requirements of Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; and
- (2) The information contained in the Report fairly presents, in all material respects, the financial condition and results of operations of the Company.

/s/ Joseph F. Puishys

Joseph F. Puishys President and Chief Executive Officer April 26, 2019

# CERTIFICATION PURSUANT TO 18 U.S.C. SECTION 1350, AS ADOPTED PURSUANT TO SECTION 906 OF THE SARBANES-OXLEY ACT OF 2002

In connection with the Annual Report of Apogee Enterprises, Inc. (the "Company") on Form 10-K for the period ended March 2, 2019, as filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "Report"), I, James S. Porter, Chief Financial Officer of the Company, certify, pursuant to 18 U.S.C. §1350, as adopted pursuant §906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, that:

- (1) The Report fully complies with the requirements of Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; and
- (2) The information contained in the Report fairly presents, in all material respects, the financial condition and results of operations of the Company.

/s/ James S. Porter

James S. Porter Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer April 26, 2019